

Owner's Manual

LC 500

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

For your information 6
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 34
For safe driving 35
Seat belts 36
SRS airbags 41
Pop Up Hood 47
Active roll bar 49
Exhaust gas precautions 52

1-2. Child safety
Airbag manual on-off system 53
Riding with children 54
Child restraint systems (except for Korea) 55
Child restraint systems (for Korea) 74

1-3. Emergency assistance
eCall 80

1-4. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 85
Alarm 86

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 92
Gauges and meters 97
Multi-information display 100
Head-up display 107
Fuel consumption information 111

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 116

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Doors 120
Trunk 124
Smart entry & start system 128

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 136
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints 142

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 143
Inside rear view mirror 144
Outside rear view mirrors 145

3-5. Opening, closing the windows
Power windows 148

3-6. Opening and closing the soft top roof
Soft top roof 152

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 162
Cargo and luggage 168
Trailer towing 169

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch 170

Automatic transmission 173
Turn signal lever 180
Parking brake 181
Brake Hold 184

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 186
Automatic High Beam 189
Fog light switch 191
Windshield wipers and washer 192

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 196

4-5. Using the driving support systems
Lexus Safety System + ... 198
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 203
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 211
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 219
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 227
Dynamic radar cruise control 237
Cruise control 245
Driving mode select switch 248
Lexus parking assist-sensor 249
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Exhaust Gas Filter system 265
Driving assist systems 265

4-6. Driving tips
Winter driving tips 271
Eco-friendly driving tips 273

5 Interior features

5-1. Remote Touch
Remote Touch 276

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge
Lexus Climate Concierge 280

5-3. Using the air conditioning system
Automatic air conditioning system 282
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters 291

5-4. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 295

5-5. Using the storage features
List of storage features 297
Trunk features 299

5-6. Using the other interior features
Other interior features 300

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 304
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 308

6-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 311
Scheduled maintenance 313

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 324
Hood 325
Positioning a floor jack 326
Engine compartment 327
Battery 333
Tires 335
Replacing the tire 344

Tire inflation pressure 349
Wheels 350
Air conditioning filter 352
Electronic key battery 353
Checking and replacing fuses 355
Light bulbs 359

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information
Emergency flashers 362
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 363

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If your vehicle needs to be towed 365
If you think something is wrong 369
Fuel pump shut off system 370
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 371
If a warning message is displayed 380
If you have a flat tire 384
If the engine will not start 385
If you lose your keys 386
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 387
If the electronic key does not operate properly 387
If the battery is discharged 389
If the soft top roof cannot be closed 396
If your vehicle overheats 404
If the vehicle becomes stuck ... 406

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 410
Fuel information 419

8-2. Customization
Customizable features 420

8-3. Items to initialize
Items to initialize 432

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 434
Alphabetical index 436

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus

dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed/Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems
- Images from the cameras

Your vehicle is equipped with cameras. Contact your Lexus dealer for the location of recording cameras.

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level, options and destinations with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

● Recorded image information can be erased by your Lexus dealer.

The image recording function can be disabled. However, if the function is disabled, data from when the system operates will not be available.

Event data recorder (except for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

● How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

● How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,

● How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in

which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation. To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

- Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder (for Korea)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various safety systems in your vehicle (e.g., the airbags, seat belts and ABS) were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

The EDR can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, personal data acquired during a defect investigation could be used to manage crash

records. A person provided by the Minister of Land Infrastructure and Transport could extract and analyze EDR data for official purpose.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

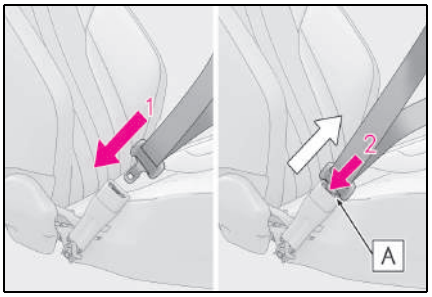
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

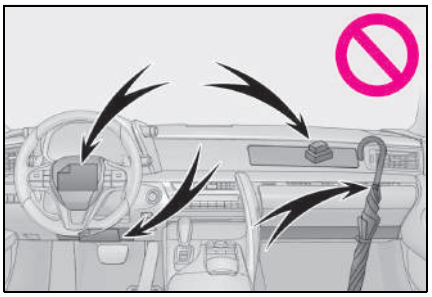
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
1 2 3...	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

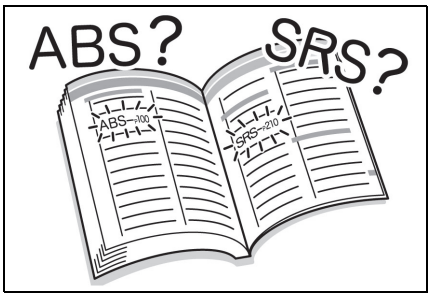


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

How to search

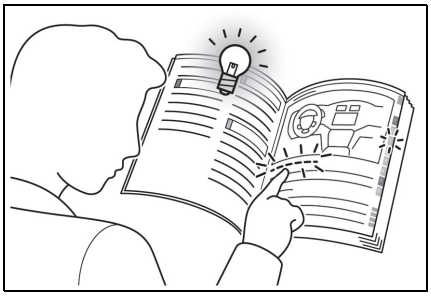
■ **Searching by name**

● Alphabetical index: →P.436



■ **Searching by installation position**

● Pictorial index: →P.12



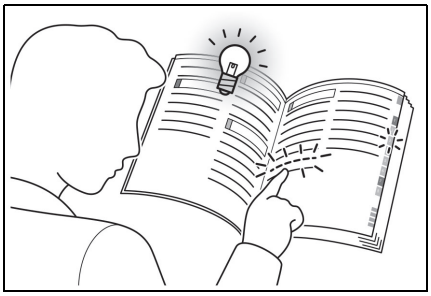
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

● What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.434



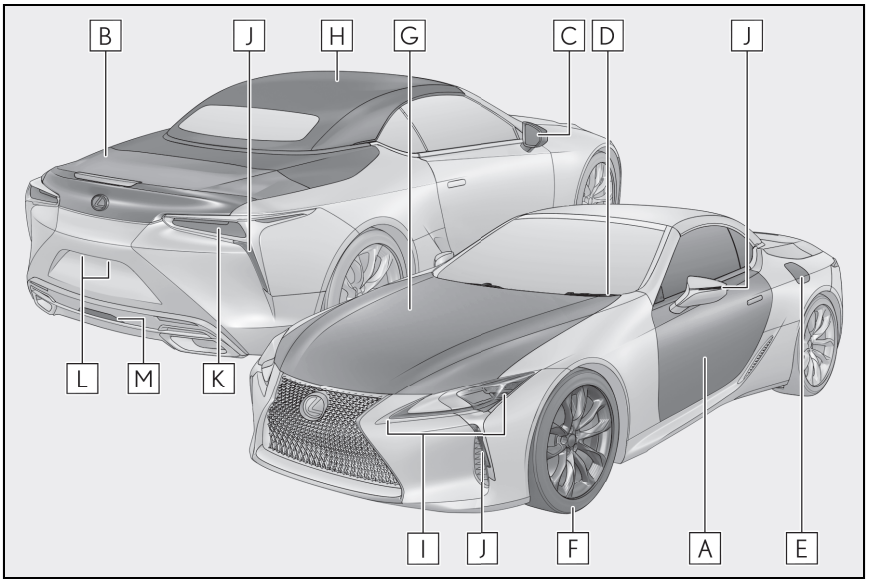
■ **Searching by title**

● Table of contents: →P.2



Pictorial index

Exterior



A Doors P.120

Locking/unlocking P.120

Opening/closing the side window/rear quarter window P.148

Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.388

Warning messages P.123

B Trunk P.124

Opening from inside the cabin P.126

Opening from outside P.126

Opening by using the mechanical key P.389

Warning messages P.123

C Outside rear view mirrors P.145

Adjusting the mirror angle P.145

Folding the mirrors P.146

Driving position memory P.138

Defogging the mirrors* P.283

D **Windshield wipers** **P.192**
Precautions against winter season P.271
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)* P.287
Precautions against car wash P.306

E **Fuel filler door** **P.196**
Refueling method P.196
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.411

F **Tires** **P.335**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.415
Winter tires P.271
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.335
Coping with flat tires P.384

G **Hood** **P.325**
Opening P.325
Engine oil P.412
Coping with overheating P.404
Warning messages P.380

H **Soft top roof** **P.152**
Opening/closing the soft top roof P.152
If it does not operate properly P.154
Cleaning P.304, 308

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.359, Watts: P.418)

I **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights/ cornering lights** **P.186**

J **Turn signal lights** **P.180**

K **Tail lights** **P.186**
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal P.266

L **License plate lights** **P.186**

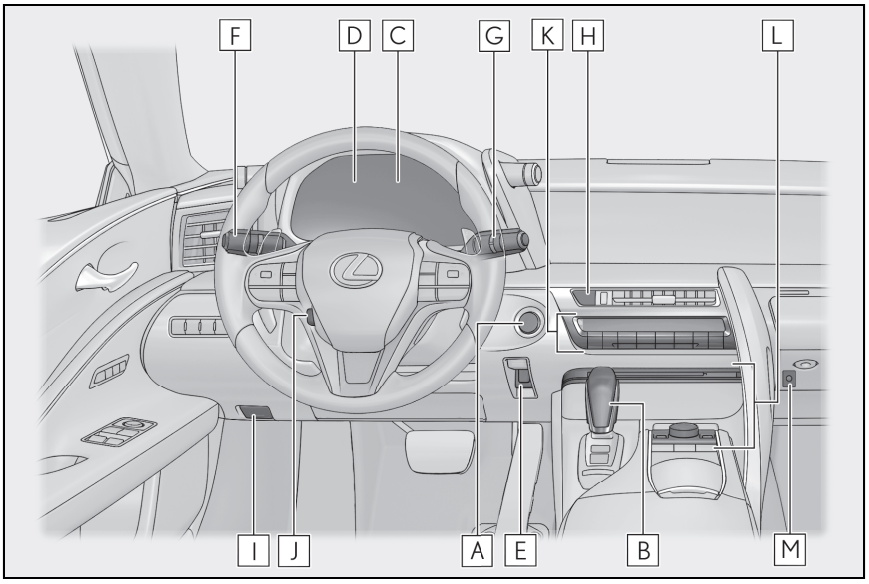
M **Rear fog light** **P.191**

Back up light

Shifting the shift lever to R..... P.175

*: If equipped

■Instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch.....P.170

Starting the engine/changing the mode.....P.170

Emergency stop of the engine.....P.362

When the engine will not start.....P.385

Warning messages.....P.171, 380

B Shift lever.....P.173

Changing the shift position.....P.175

Precautions against towing.....P.365

C Meters.....P.97

Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights.....P.97

Warning lights/indicator lights.....P.92

When the warning lights come on.....P.371

D Multi-information display.....P.100

Display.....P.100

When the warning messages are displayed.....P.380

E **Parking brake switch** **P.181**
Applying/releasing P.181
Precautions against winter season P.272
Warning buzzer/message P.375, 380

F **Turn signal lever** **P.180**
Headlight switch **P.186**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/ daytime running lights P.186
Automatic High Beam*1 ..... P.189
Rear fog light P.191

G **Windshield wiper and washer switch** **P.192**
Usage P.192
Adding washer fluid P.331
Warning messages P.381
Headlight cleaners P.192

H **Emergency flasher switch** **P.362**

I **Hood lock release lever** **P.325**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** **P.143**
Adjustment P.143
Driving position memory P.138

K **Air conditioning system** **P.282**
Usage P.282
Rear window defogger P.283

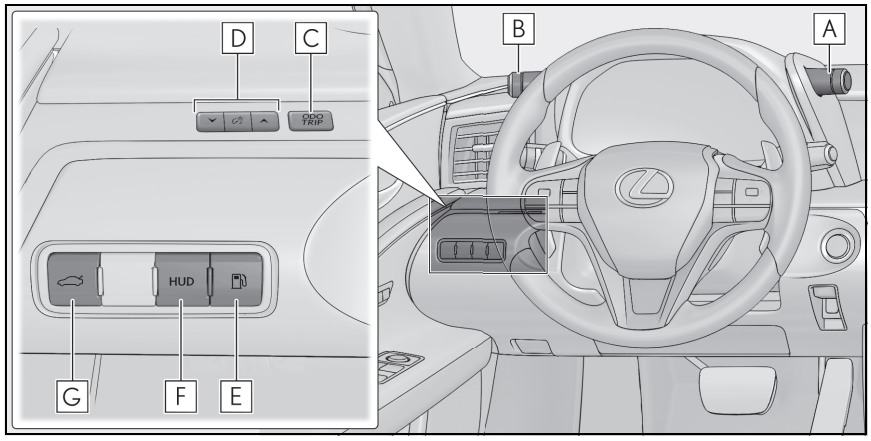
L **Audio system***2

M **Trunk opener main switch** **P.127**

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■Switches (left-hand drive vehicles)



A Driving mode select switch P.248

B VSC OFF/snow mode switch P.178, 266

C Odometer/trip meter/trip meter reset button P.99

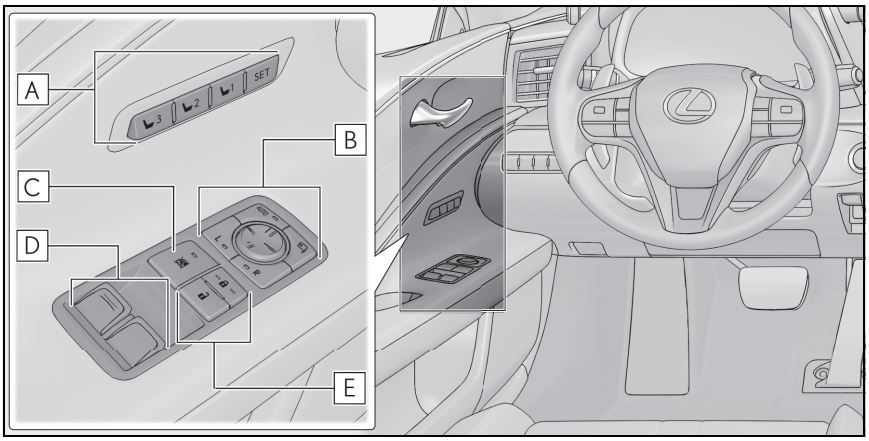
D Instrument panel light control switches P.99

E Fuel filler door opener switch P.196

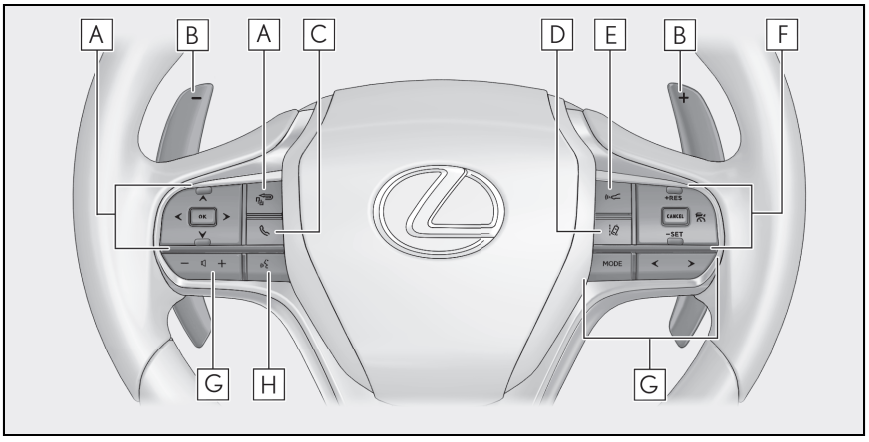
F HUD (Head-up display) switch* P.107

G Trunk opener switch P.126

*: If equipped



A Driving position memory switches P.138
B Outside rear view mirror switches P.145
C Window lock switch P.151
D Power window switches P.148
E Door lock switches P.123



A Meter control switches P.101
B Paddle shift switches P.178
C Telephone switch*1

D LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch*2 .....P.219
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2 .....P.211

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 .....P.232, 241

F Cruise control switches

Cruise control*2 ..... P.245

Dynamic radar cruise control*2 .....P.237

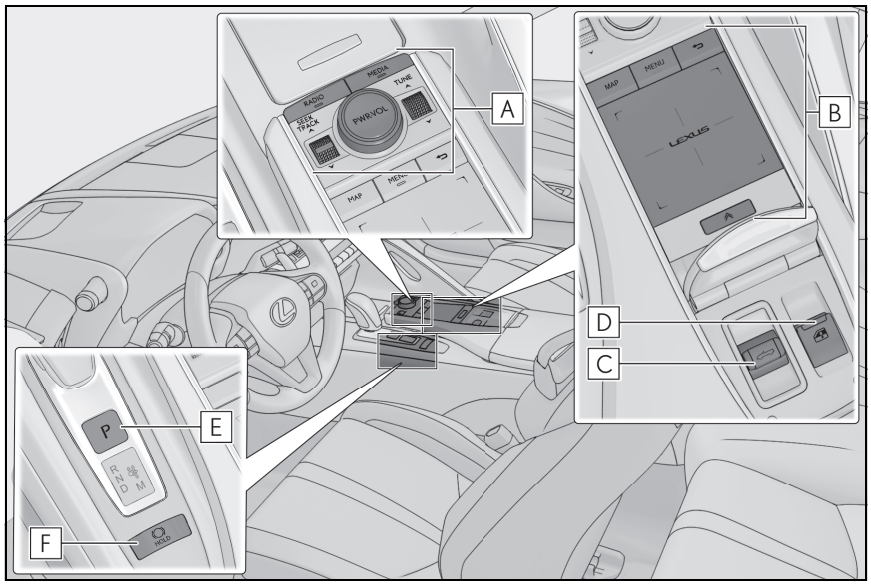
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 .....P.227

G Audio remote control switches*1

H Talk switch*1

*1: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped



A Audio control switches*

B Remote Touch* P.276

C Roof switch.....P.152

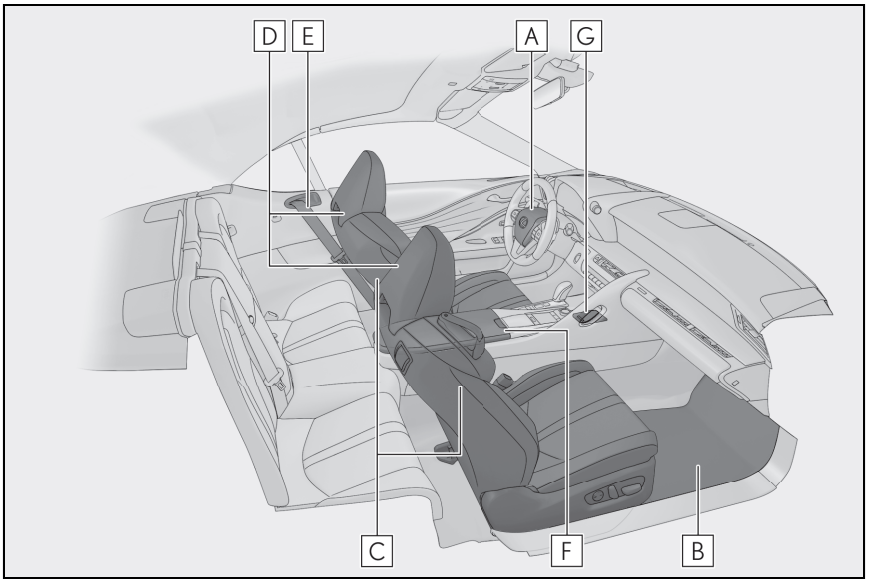
D All window control switch P.148

E P position switch P.176

F Brake hold switch P.184

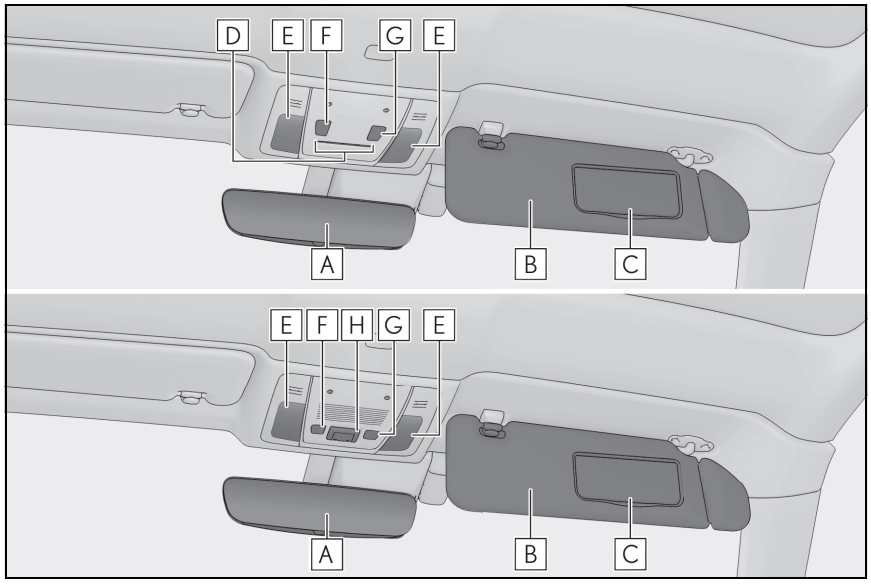
*: Refer to “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual” or “Multimedia Owner’s Manual”.

■Interior (left-hand drive vehicles)



A SRS airbags P.41
B Floor mats P.34
C Front seats P.136
D Head restraints P.142
E Seat belts P.36
F Console box/auxiliary box P.298
G Cup holder P.298

■Ceiling (left-hand drive vehicles)



A Inside rear view mirror P.144

B Sun visors*1, 2 ..... P.300

C Vanity mirrors P.300

D Seat lights P.295
Shift lever light P.295

E Personal lights P.296

F Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.88

G Door-linked personal light switch P.296

H "SOS" button P.80

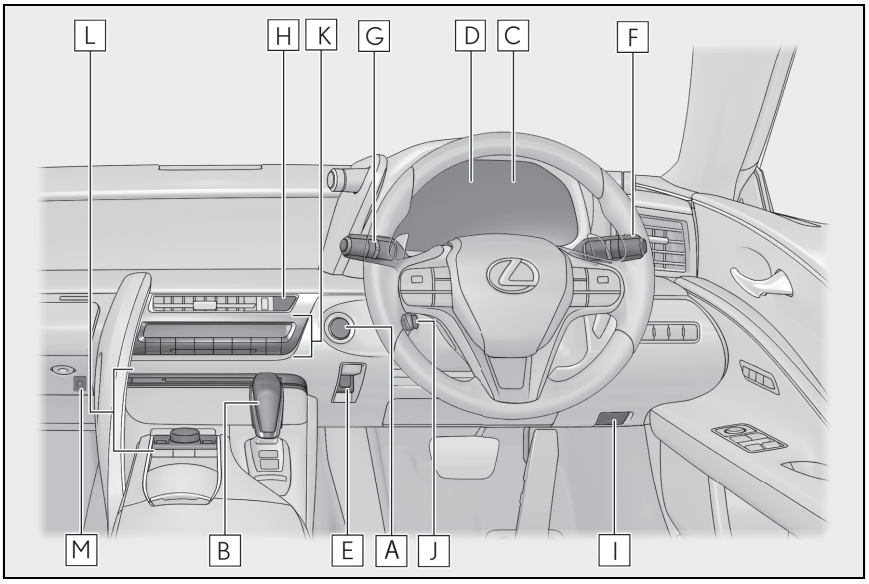
*1: Except for Taiwan: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.57)



*2: For Taiwan: DO NOT carry baby, infant and children on the front passenger seat. Except for the front passenger seat, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.59)



■Instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch.....P.170

Starting the engine/changing the mode.....P.170

Emergency stop of the engine.....P.362

When the engine will not start.....P.385

Warning messages.....P.171, 380

B Shift lever.....P.173

Changing the shift position.....P.175

Precautions against towing.....P.365

C Meters.....P.97

Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights.....P.97

Warning lights/indicator lights.....P.92

When the warning lights come on.....P.371

D Multi-information display.....P.100

Display.....P.100

When the warning messages are displayed.....P.380

E **Parking brake switch** **P.181**
Applying/releasing P.181
Precautions against winter season P.272
Warning buzzer/message P.375, 380

F **Turn signal lever** **P.180**
Headlight switch **P.186**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/license plate lights/ daytime running lights P.186
Automatic High Beam*1 ..... P.189
Rear fog light P.191

G **Windshield wiper and washer switch** **P.192**
Usage P.192
Adding washer fluid P.331
Warning messages P.381
Headlight cleaners P.192

H **Emergency flasher switch** **P.362**

I **Hood lock release lever** **P.325**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** **P.143**
Adjustment P.143
Driving position memory P.138

K **Air conditioning system** **P.282**
Usage P.282
Rear window defogger P.283

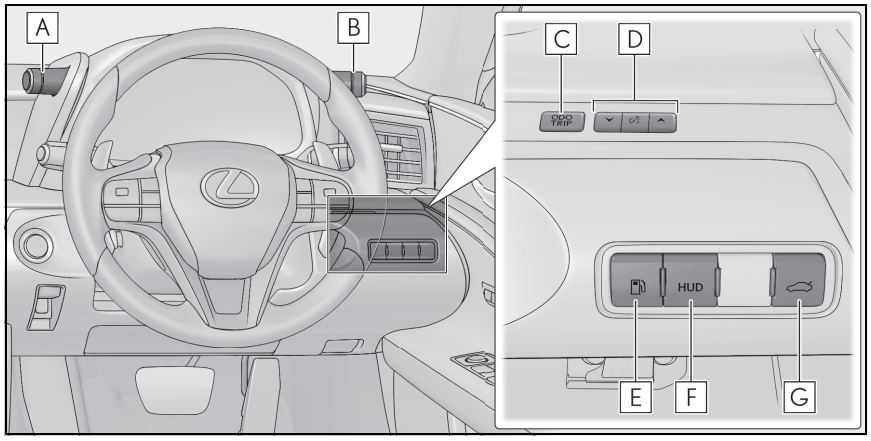
L **Audio system***2

M **Trunk opener main switch** **P.127**

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■Switches (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Driving mode select switch P.248

B VSC OFF/snow mode switch P.178, 266

C Odometer/trip meter/trip meter reset button P.99

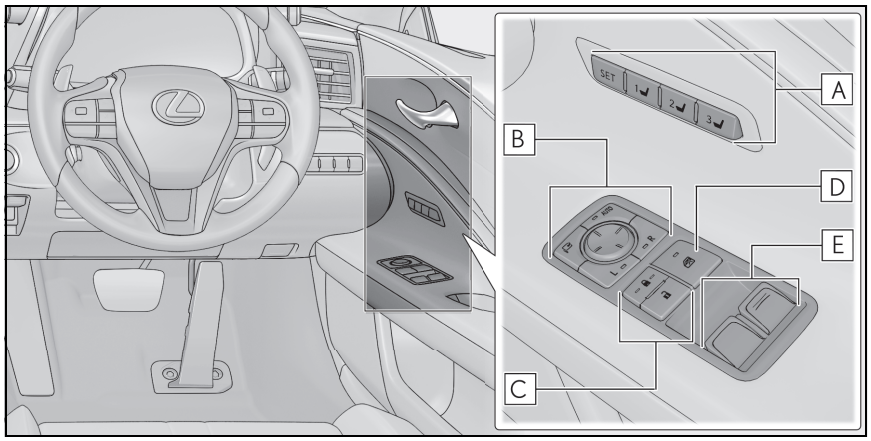
D Instrument panel light control switches P.99

E Fuel filler door opener switch P.196

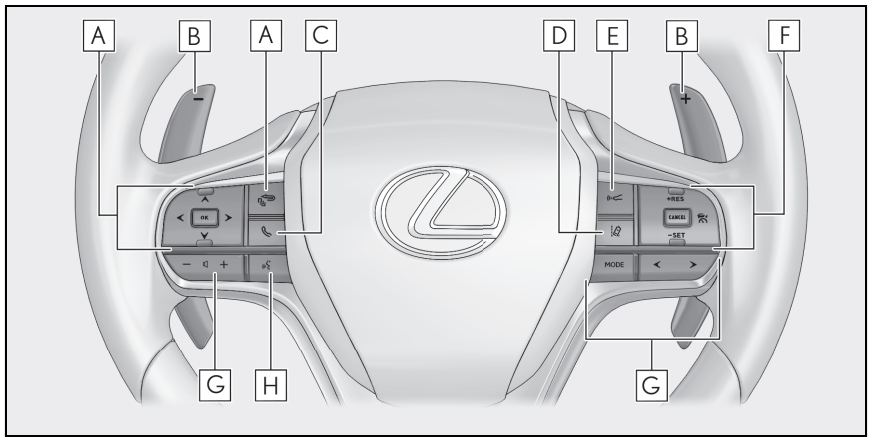
F HUD (Head-up display) switch* P.107

G Trunk opener switch P.126

*: If equipped



A Driving position memory switches P.138
B Outside rear view mirror switches P.145
C Door lock switches P.123
D Window lock switch P.151
E Power window switches P.148



A Meter control switches P.101
B Paddle shift switches P.178
C Telephone switch*1

D LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch*2 .....P.219

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 .....P.232, 241

F Cruise control switches

Cruise control*2 ..... P.245

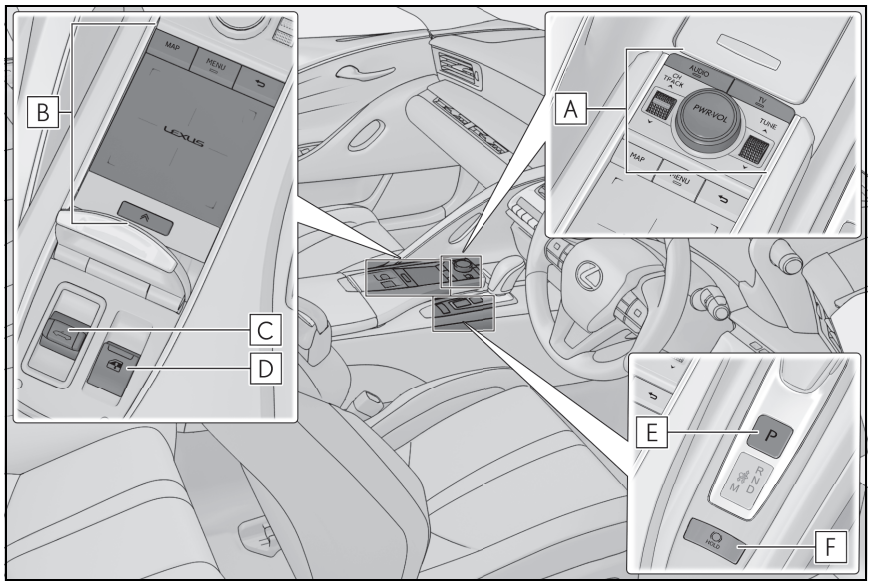
Dynamic radar cruise control*2 .....P.237

G Audio remote control switches*1

H Talk switch*1

*1: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped



A Audio control switches*

B Remote Touch* P.276

C Roof switch.....P.152

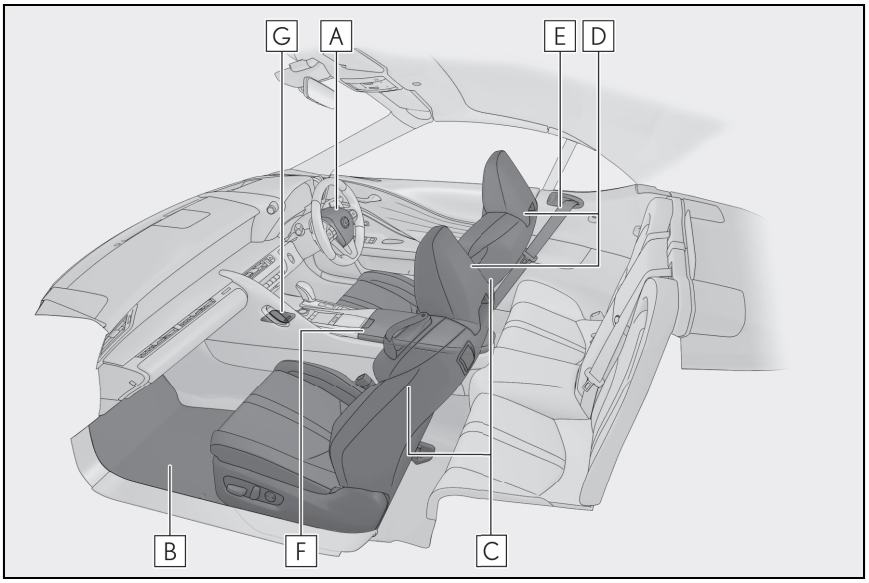
D All window control switch..... P.148

E P position switch P.176

F **Brake hold switch** P.184

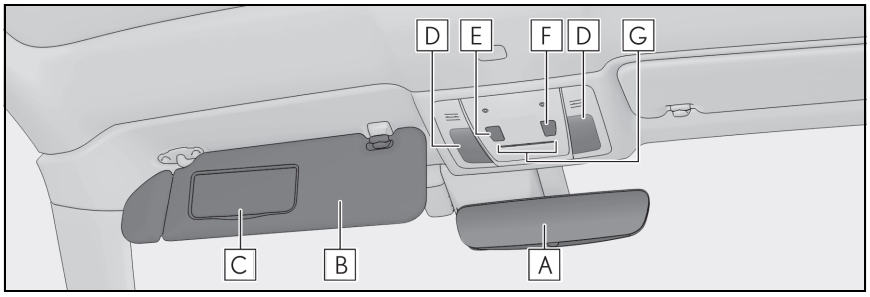
*: Refer to “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual”.

■Interior (right-hand drive vehicles)



A SRS airbags P.41
B Floor mats P.34
C Front seats P.136
D Head restraints P.142
E Seat belts P.36
F Console box/auxiliary box P.298
G Cup holder P.298

■Ceiling (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Inside rear view mirror P.144

B Sun visors* P.300

C Vanity mirrors P.300

D Personal light P.296

E Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch P.88

F Door-linked personal light switch P.296

G Seat lights P.295
Shift lever light P.295

*: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.57)



1-1. For safe use

Before driving 34

For safe driving 35

Seat belts 36

SRS airbags 41

Pop Up Hood 47

Active roll bar 49

Exhaust gas precautions 52

1-2. Child safety

Airbag manual on-off system .. 53

Riding with children 54

Child restraint systems (except for Korea) 55

Child restraint systems (for Korea) 74

1-3. Emergency assistance

eCall 80

1-4. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 83

Double locking system 85

Alarm 86

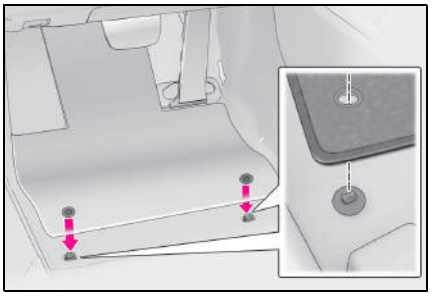
Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

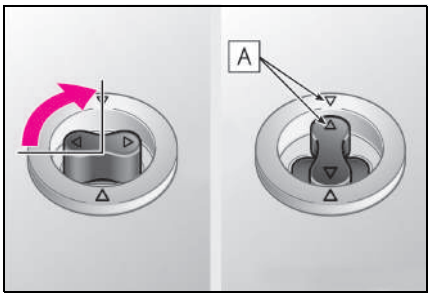
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks [A].

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

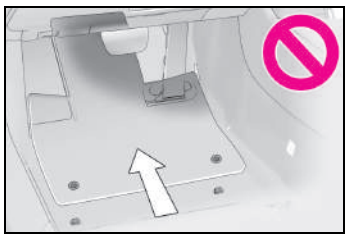
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

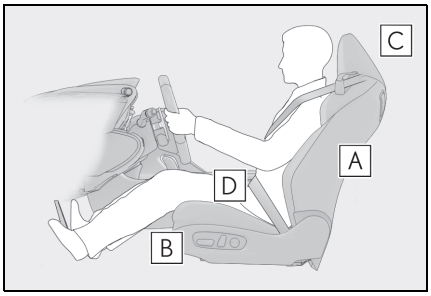


- With the engine stopped and the shift position in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.136)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.136)

C Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.142)

D Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.35)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.37)
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.55, 74)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly.

(→P.144, 145)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

WARNING

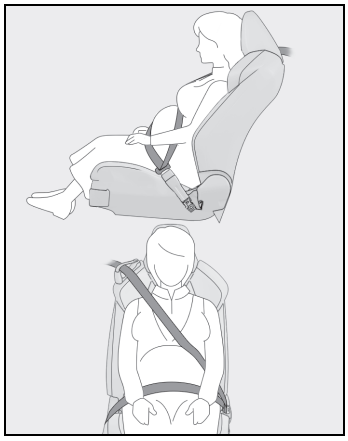
Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ **Wearing a seat belt**

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

WARNING

■ Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.37)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.37)

■ When children are in the vehicle

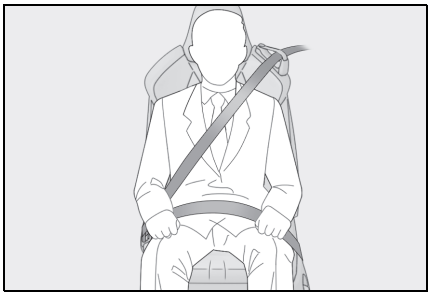
→P.54

■ Seat belt damage and wear

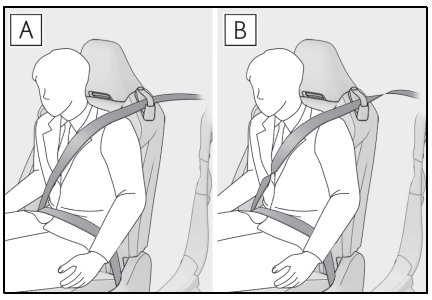
- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.



● Do not twist the seat belt.



A Not twisted

B Twisted

■ **Child seat belt usage**

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

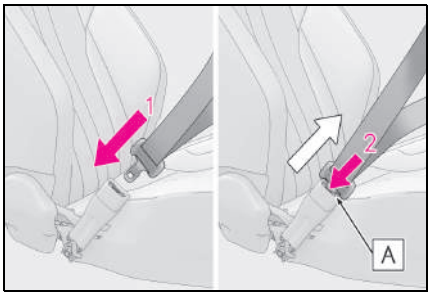
● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.55, 74)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage.

■ **Seat belt regulations**

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button A .

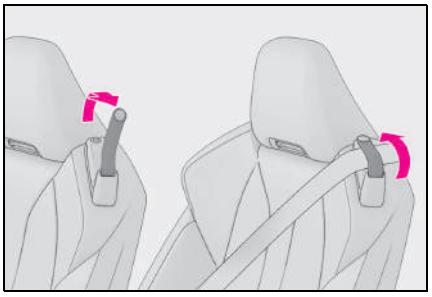
■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Seat belt guide

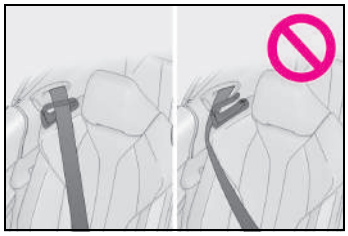
The front seats are equipped with guides to pass the seat belt. When using the seat belt, make sure to pass the seat belt through the guide.

When getting into or out of a rear seat, release the seat belt from the guide.



WARNING

■ **Seat belt guide**



Make sure to pass the seat belt through the seat belt guide when using the seat belt.

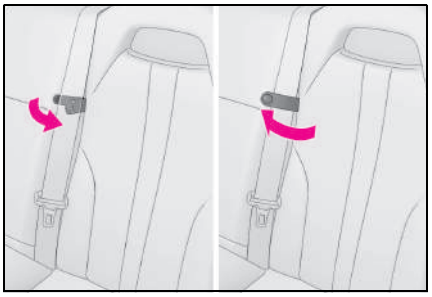
■ **When using the seat belt guide**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Always make sure that the belt is not twisted, and runs freely through the guide.
- Regardless of whether the guide is used or not, always secure the seat belt guide button.
- Do not hang from or pull the guide forcefully.

Rear seat belt holder

The rear seats are equipped with belt holders to secure the seat belt. When the seat belt flaps in the wind, secure the seat belt using the belt holder.



WARNING

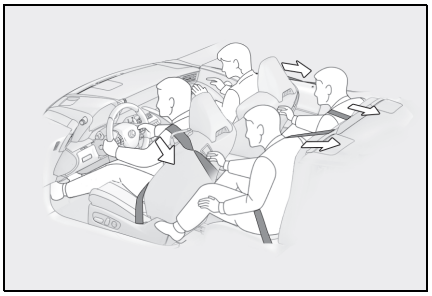
■ **When using the rear seat belt**

Make sure to release the seat belt from the belt holder.

Seat belt pretensioners

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision or a vehicle rollover.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact or a rear impact.



■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

WARNING

■ Seat belt pretensioners

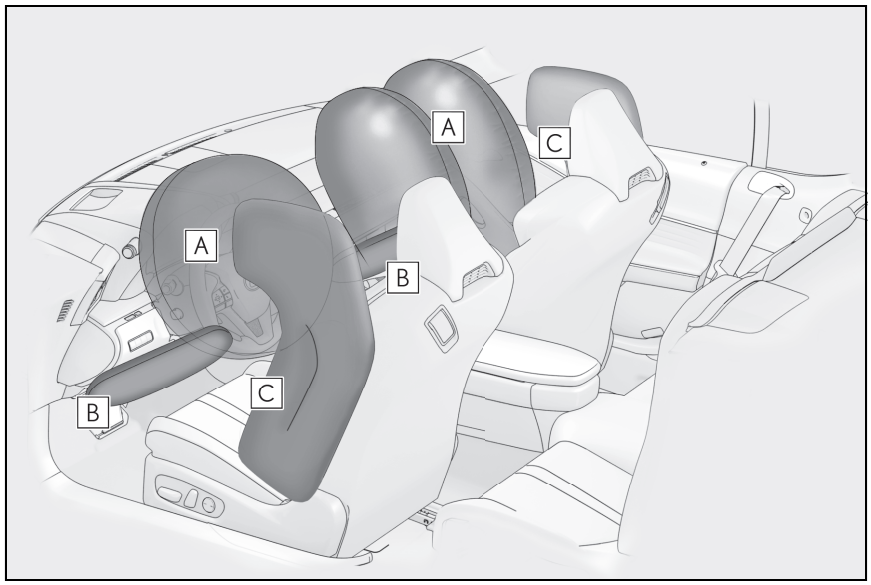
If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



▶ SRS front airbags

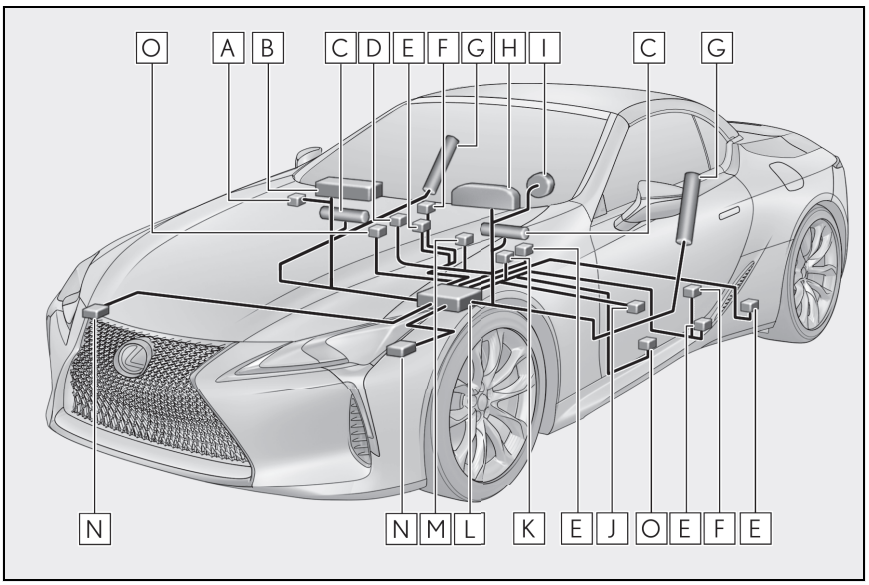
A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side airbags

C SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

■ SRS airbag system components



A Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped)

B Front passenger airbag

C Knee airbags

D "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator lights (if equipped)

E Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters

F Side impact sensors (front)

G Front side airbags

H SRS warning light

I Driver airbag

J Driver's seat position sensor

K Driver's seat belt buckle switch

L Airbag sensor assembly

M Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

N Front impact sensors

O Side impact sensors (door)

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.121)
- Vehicles with the Secondary Collision Brake: The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.266)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.296)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.362)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.370)
- Vehicles with eCall: If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call* to the eCall control center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.80)
  - An SRS airbag is deployed.
  - A seat belt pretensioner is activated.
  - The vehicle is involved in a severe rear-end collision.
  - The vehicle is involved in a rollover accident.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:
  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

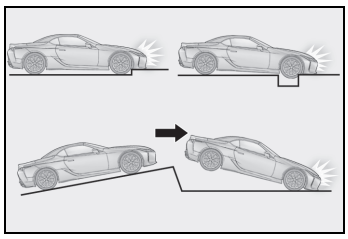
SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags)

The SRS side airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

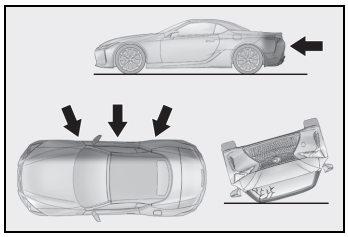
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

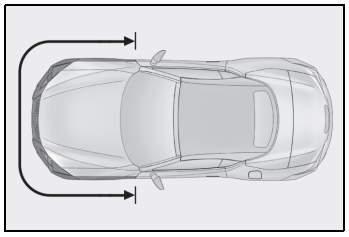
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



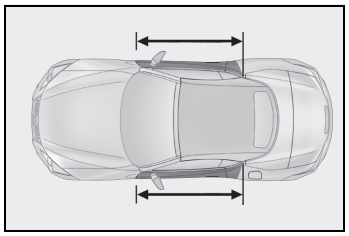
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

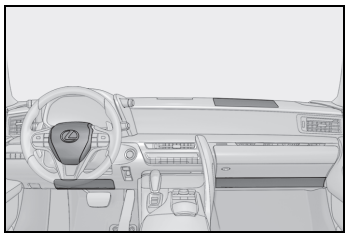
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



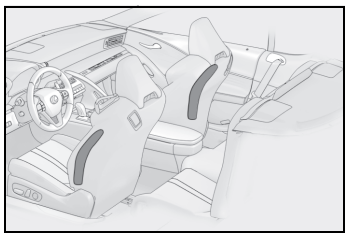
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

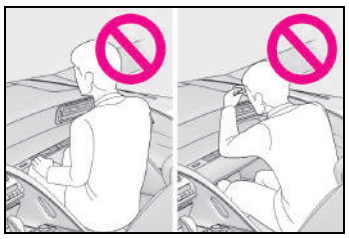


WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

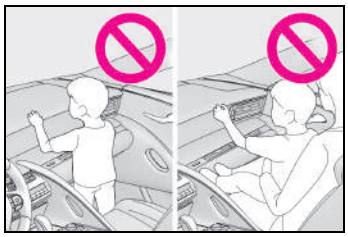
Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.
  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.
    The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.55)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



WARNING

- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



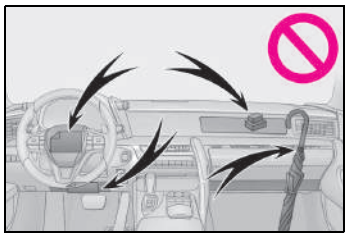
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the front door.



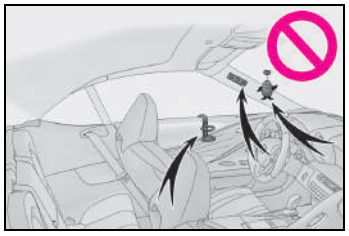
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass and side door glass.



- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the doors.
Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.

WARNING

- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

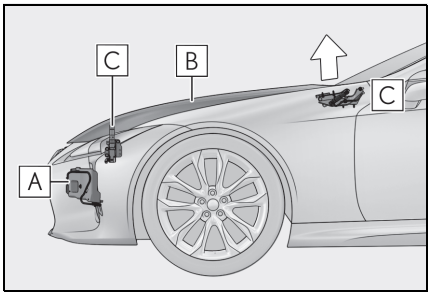
- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, door panels, door trims or door speakers
- Modifications to the door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, or front bumper
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches or roof luggage carrier
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Pop Up Hood

In the event of a frontal collision with a body, such as a pedestrian, the Pop Up Hood system raises the hood to reduce the possibility of a serious impact to the pedestrian's head area by adding clearance to the engine compartment.

When the sensors located at the back of the front bumper detect a frontal impact with a body, such as a pedestrian, which meets or exceeds the threshold level while the vehicle is being driven within the operational speed range, the system operates.

System components



A Sensors

B Hood

C Lifters

Pop Up Hood precautions

- Before scrapping your vehicle, make sure to contact your Lexus dealer.
- The Pop Up Hood system cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it

replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Pop Up Hood operational conditions**

The Pop Up Hood will operate when the vehicle detects an impact such as the following:

- The front bumper detects a frontal impact equivalent to or greater than that of a pedestrian while the vehicle being driven within the operational speed range of approximately 25 to 55 km/h (16 to 34 mph). (The system is operated by an impact of threshold level or greater, even in the case of a minor collision that may not leave a trace on the front bumper. Also, depending on the impact conditions or vehicle speed, the system may operate by a collision with a light or small object or a small animal.)
- In other situations such as the following, the system may operate when an impact is applied to the lower part of the vehicle or front bumper:
  - Colliding with a curb
  - Falling into a deep hole
  - Landing hard
  - Hitting the slope of a parking lot, an undulating road, a protruding object or falling object

■ **Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood may not operate properly**

- If a pedestrian collides with the right or left corner of the front bumper or the side of the vehicle. As such impacts may be difficult to detect, the system may not operate.
- If the vehicle speed is not detected correctly, such as if the vehicle is sliding sideways, the system may not operate properly.

■ **Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood will not operate**

The Pop Up Hood will not operate in the following situations:

- Colliding with a lying person
- A frontal impact applied to the front bumper while driving at speeds outside of the operational speed range
- A side impact or rear impact
- A vehicle rollover (In some accident situations, the Pop Up Hood may operate.)

WARNING

■ **When the Pop Up Hood is operated**

- Do not pull the hood lock release lever. Doing so after the Pop Up Hood has operated will further raise the hood and may cause an injury. Do not drive with the hood raised, as doing so may block the driver's vision, possibly causing an accident.
- Do not forcibly push down the hood. As the popped up hood cannot be lowered by hand, doing so may deform the hood or cause an injury.
- If the Pop Up Hood has operated, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer. If the Pop Up Hood has operated, stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not touch the lifters immediately after the Pop Up Hood has operated, as the lifters may be hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ **Pop Up Hood precautions**

- Make sure to close the hood before driving, as the system may not operate properly if the hood is not fully closed.
- Make sure that all 4 tires are of the specified size and inflated to the specified tire pressure. If tires of a different size are used, the system may not operate properly.
- If something has hit the area around the front bumper, the sensors may be damaged even if the Pop Up Hood has not operated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

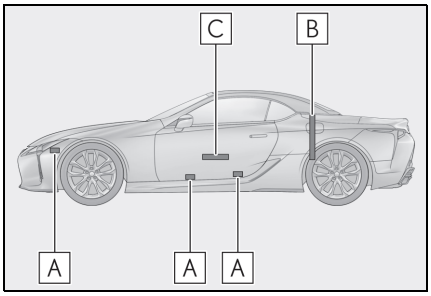
NOTICE

- Do not remove or repair the parts or wiring of the Pop Up Hood, as doing so may cause accidental operation or prevent the system from operating properly. If repair or replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove such components as the front bumper, hood or suspension, or replace them with non-genuine parts, as doing so may prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not install anything to the front bumper or hood, as doing so may prevent the sensors from detecting an impact correctly and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not close the hood with force or apply load to the lifters, as doing so may damage the lifters and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not modify the suspension, as changes made to the vehicle height may prevent the system from operating properly.

Active roll bar

The active roll bar is the mechanism that ensure the bars to pop out upward when the sensors detect a frontal or side impact, or vehicle rollover.

System components



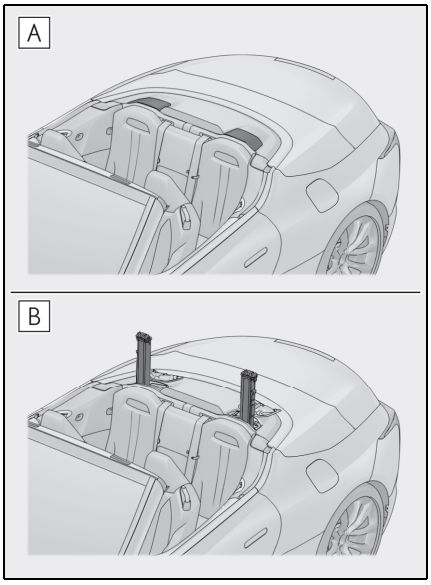
A Sensors

B Active roll bar

C ECU

Operation of the active roll bar

The active roll bar is stored behind the rear seats. When the system operates, the bars pop out upward.



A Before operating

B After operating

■ **Active roll bar precautions**

● Before scrapping your vehicle, make sure to contact your Lexus dealer.

● If the active roll bar operates when the soft top roof is opened, the soft top roof cannot be closed.

● The active roll bar cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Active roll bar operational conditions**

● The active roll bar operates regardless of the opening/closing state of the soft top roof.

● The active roll bar will operate in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform, or the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

- If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
- If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle underrides, or goes under, the bed of a truck

● The active roll bar operates when the vehicle rolls over.

● The active roll bar may also operate if a serious impact occurs to the underside of the vehicle, such as in the following situation.

- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- The vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts when the vehicle has slided sideways and collided with a curb, etc.

■ **Conditions under which the active roll bar may not operate**

The active roll bar does not generally operate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal or side collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, operation of the active roll bar may occur.

● Collision from the rear

● Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment

● Collision from the side at an angle

■ **When the active roll bar operates**

The soft top roof cannot be opened or closed while the active roll bar is operating.

■ **Warning message**

If "Active Roll Bar System Malfunction Visit

Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

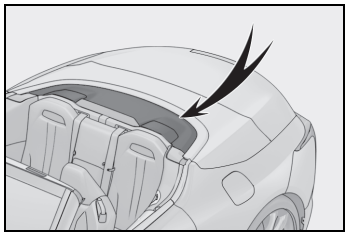
WARNING

■ Active roll bar precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the active roll bar.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Make sure that all passengers no not have any part of their body in the operating range of the active roll bar. Also, do not sit on the package tray.



- Do not put anything on the package tray. An object on the package tray may fly when the active roll bar operates.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the active roll bar components.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the active roll bar has operated, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so.

Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

■ When the active roll bar has operated

- If the active roll bar has operated, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer. If the active roll bar have operated, stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not touch the active roll bar immediately after it has operated, as the bars may be hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ Active roll bar precautions

Observe the following precautions to ensure the active roll bar can operate correctly.

- If something has hit the area around the front bumper or front doors, the sensors may be damaged even if the active roll bar has not operated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove or repair the parts or wiring of the active roll bar, as doing so may cause accidental operation or prevent the system from operating properly. If repair or replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not place anything on the package tray.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

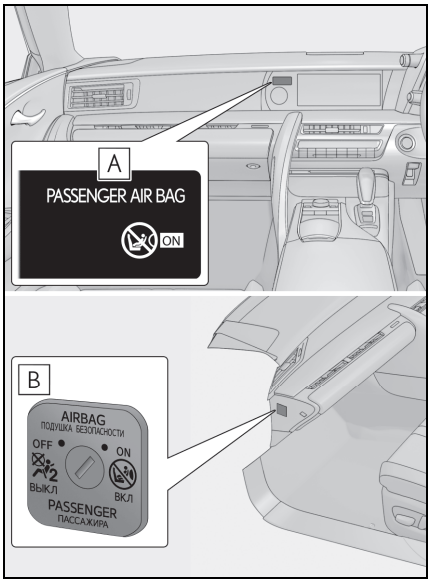
The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag manual on-off system*

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and front passenger knee airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

System components



A "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

"PASSENGER AIR BAG" and "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on, and about after 60 seconds they go off. (only when the engine switch is in ON).

B Airbag manual on-off switch

■ **"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information**

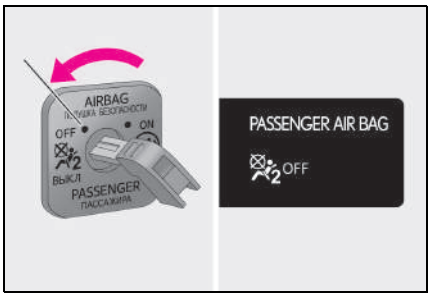
If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- The "OFF" indicator does not illuminate when the airbag manual on-off switch is set to "OFF".
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

Deactivating the airbags for the front passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in ON).



WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

WARNING

■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the window lock switch to avoid children operating the power window accidentally. (→P.151)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems (except for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

- Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.
- The use of a Lexus genuine child restraint system is recommended, as it is safer to use in this vehicle. Lexus genuine child restraint systems are made specifically for Lexus vehicles. They can be purchased at a Lexus dealer.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.55

When using a child restraint system: P.56

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.60, 64, 67

Child restraint system installation method: P.70

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.71
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: P.73

Points to remember

- Prioritize and observe the warnings, as well as the laws and regulations for child restraint systems.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles. Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.

WARNING

- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

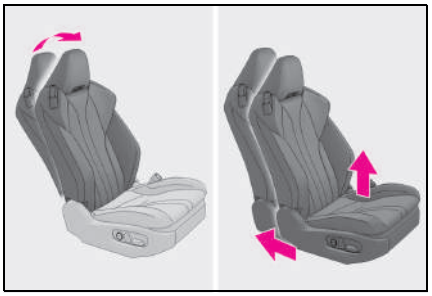
- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.62, 65, 68) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat (except for Taiwan)

For the safety of a child, install child restraint system to the rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.



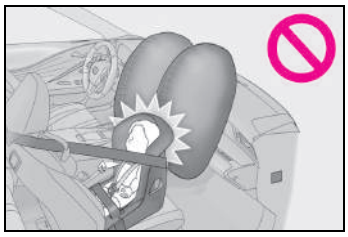
WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system (except for Taiwan)

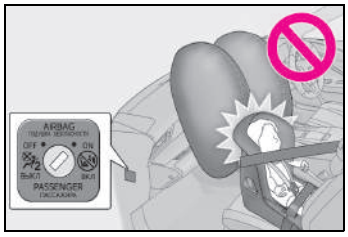
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

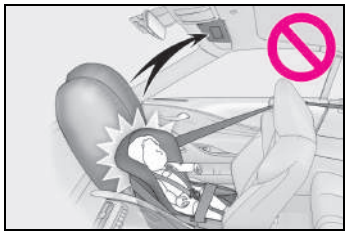
- Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P.53)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

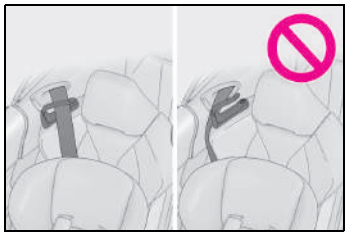


WARNING

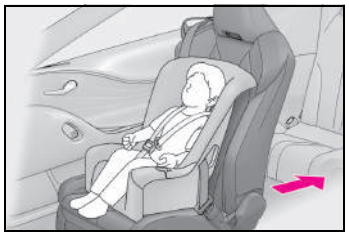


WARNING

- When unavoidably installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure to pass the seat belt through the seat belt guide and fasten the button.



- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

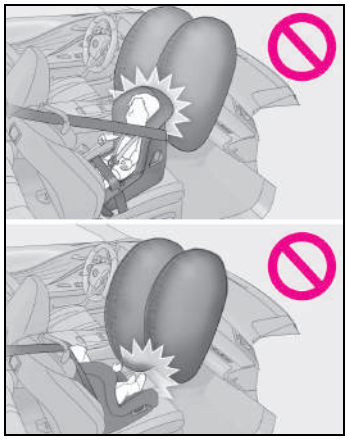


When installing a child restraint system (for Taiwan)

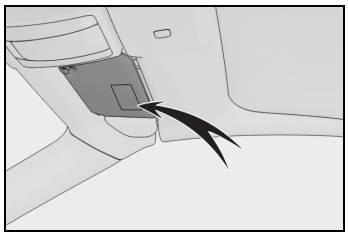
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

- Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING

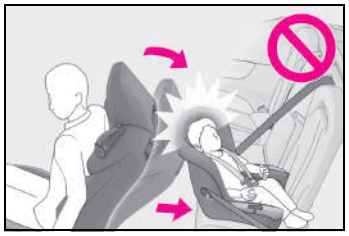


WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat from which the SRS side airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles). (→P.63)



Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Argentina and Malaysia)

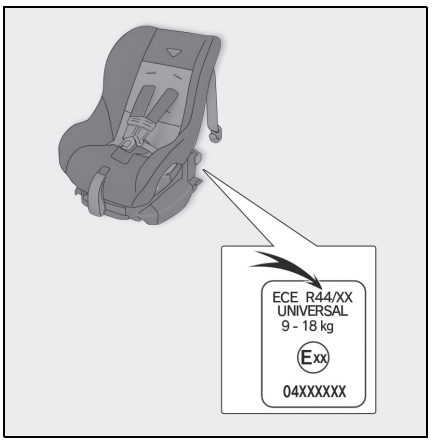
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.62) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible

seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ **Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44*1.
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.

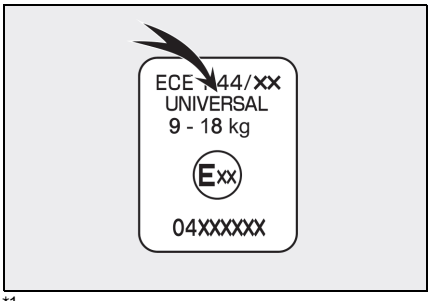


Example of the displayed regulation Number

UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*2
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"

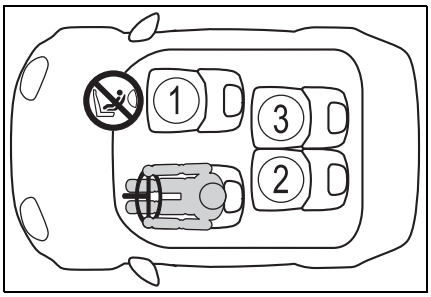


*1: UN(ECE) R44 is regulations for child restraint systems.

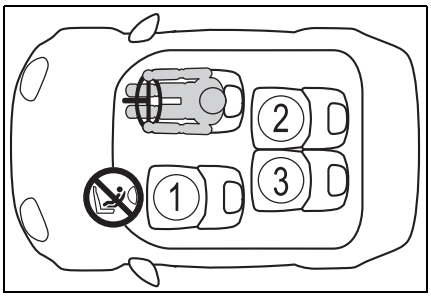
*2: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2	
3	

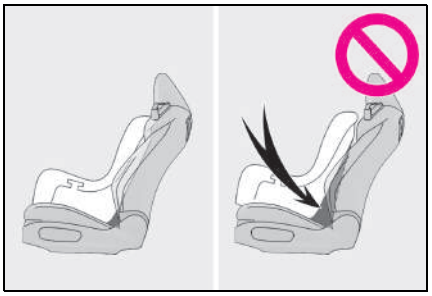
U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

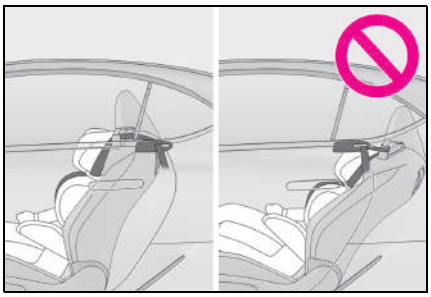
Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	No	No
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X	F2X
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture" relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

Fixture	Description
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Taiwan)

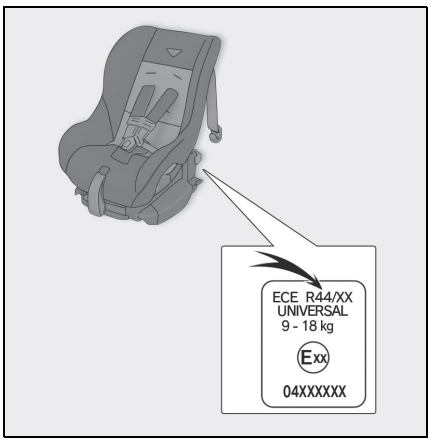
■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.65) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

attached to the child restraint system.

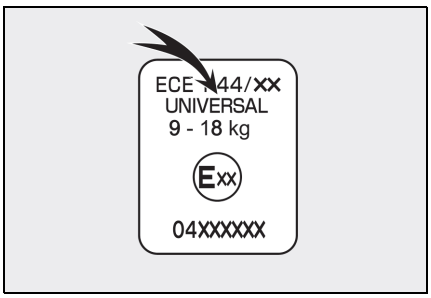


Example of the displayed regulation Number

UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*2
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

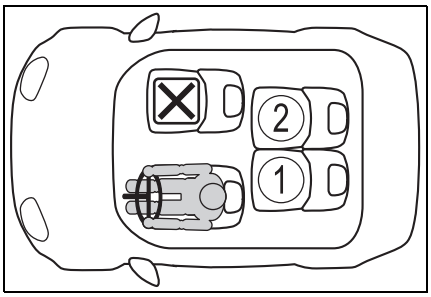
- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 is U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1	
2	

Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system

Not suitable for child restraint system

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position		
Seat position number	①	②
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	No	No
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	F2X	F2X
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.

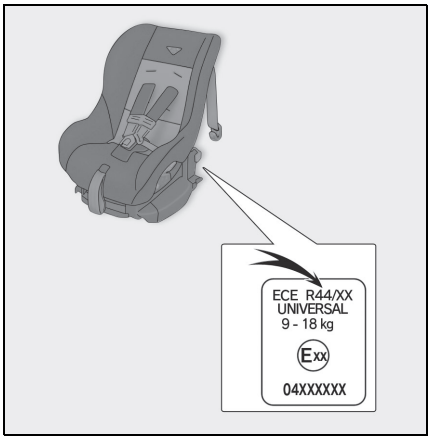
Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for South Africa)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.68) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



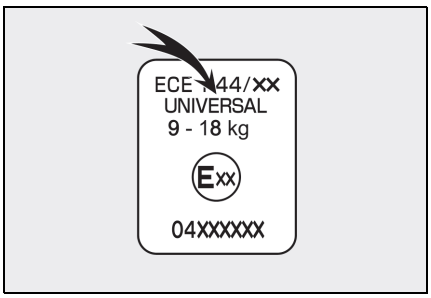
Example of the displayed regulation Number

UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*2]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"

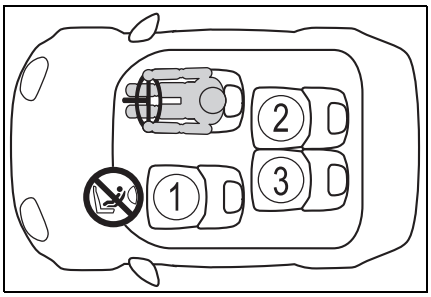
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 is U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2	
3	

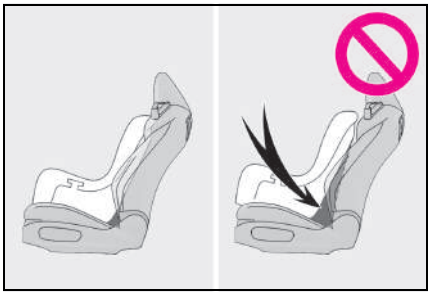
U Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint system

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

■ Detail information for CRS installation

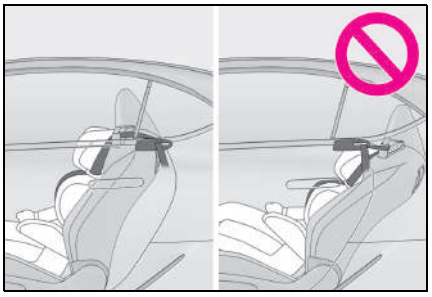
Seating position				
Seat position number	①		②	③
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF		
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	No	No
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	F2X	F2X
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	No

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

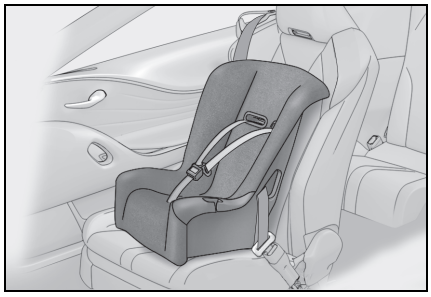
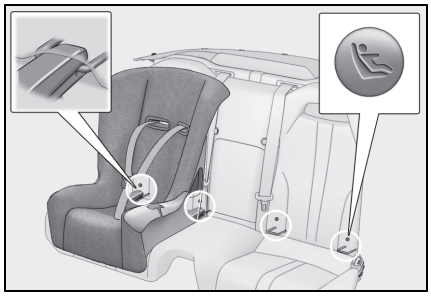
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.71
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.73

■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

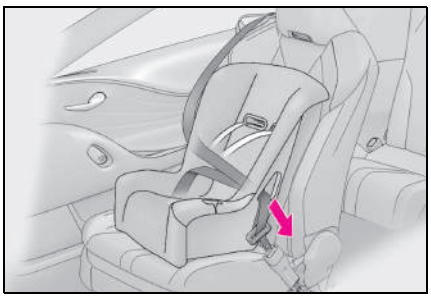
If the child restraint system on hand is not within the universal category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the Vehicle List provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.61, 62, 64, 65, 67, 68)

1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.56 for front passenger seat adjustment.

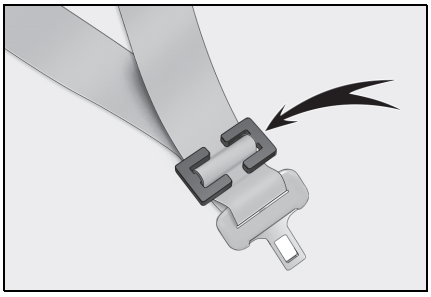
2 If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.142)

3 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions

enclosed with the child restraint system.



4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.72)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

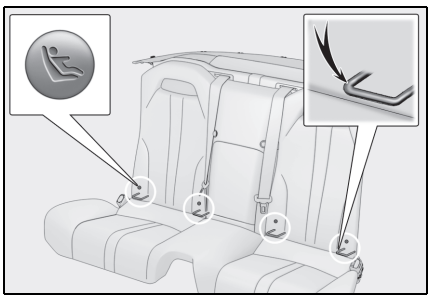
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchorages are provided for the each rear seat. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



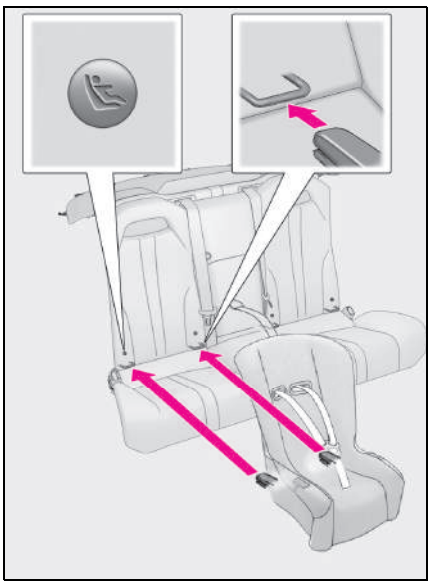
■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the universal category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the Vehicle List provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.61, 62, 64, 65, 67, 68)

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



2 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.72)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint systems (for Korea)

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: →P.74

Child restraint system: →P.75

When using a child restraint system: →P.76

Child restraint system installation method
- Fixed with a seat belt: →P.77
- Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor: →P.78

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

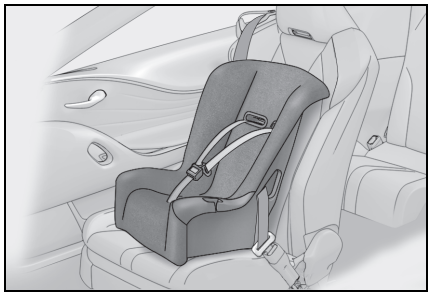
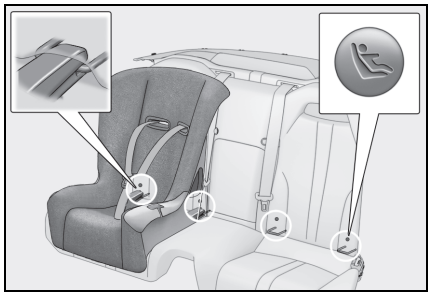
WARNING

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided with the child restraint system manufacturer and that the system is properly secured.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle.

Child restraint system

■ Types of child restraint system installation methods

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

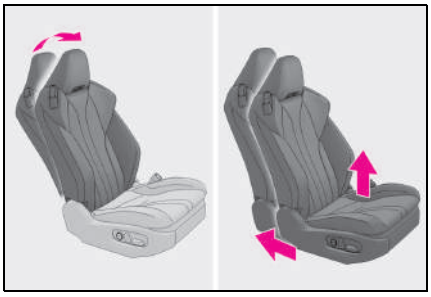
Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.77
ISOFIX rigid anchor attachment		P.78

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat

For the safety of a child, install child restraint systems to a rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Raise the seatback as much as possible
- Move the seat to the rearmost position
- Raise the seat to the highest position
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

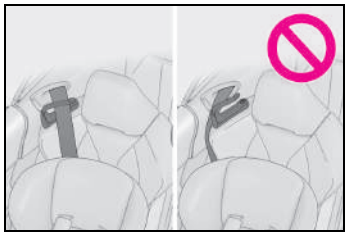


WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When unavoidably installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure to pass the seat belt through the seat belt guide and fasten the button.

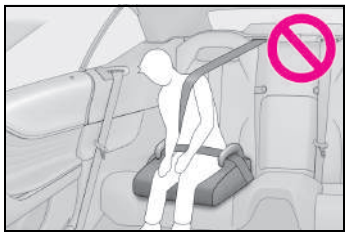


- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchor for the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the seatback to the most upright position, move the seat as far back as possible, raise the seat to the highest position, and then install.
  If the head restraint interferes with the installation of the child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

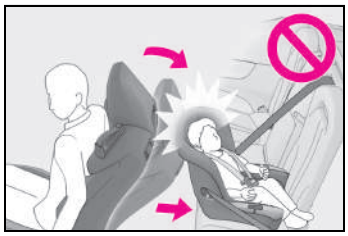


WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



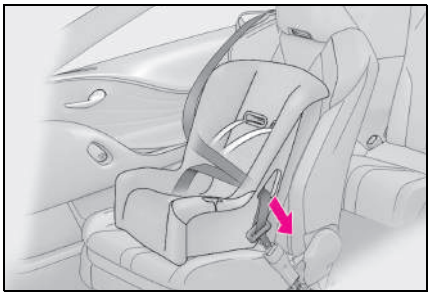
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

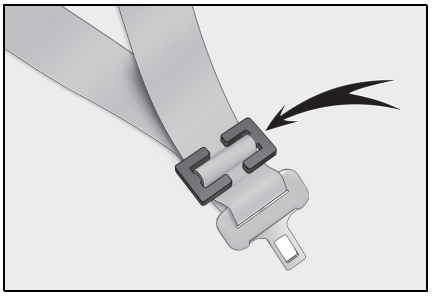
■ Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1. If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.76 for front passenger seat adjustment.
2. If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.142)
3. Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



4 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



5 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.78)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer:

Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

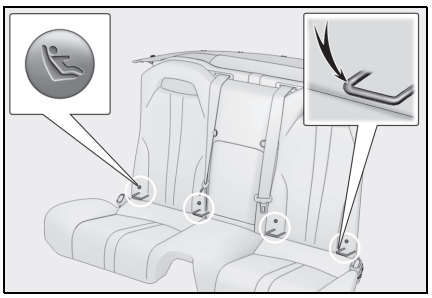
- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor

■ ISOFIX rigid anchors (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchors are provided for the each rear seat. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to

the seats.)

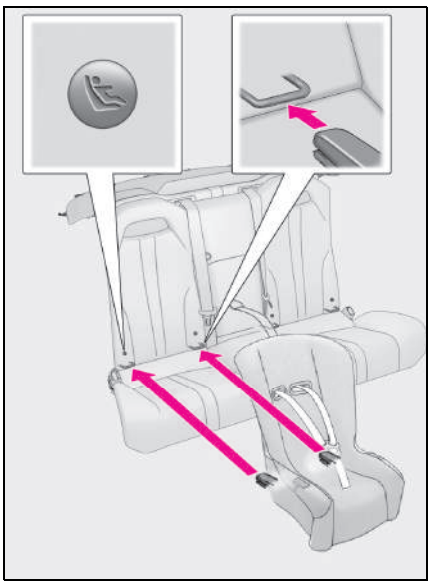


■ **Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX child restraint system)**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



2 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.78)

WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- If the seat is adjusted, reconfirm the security of the child restraint system.

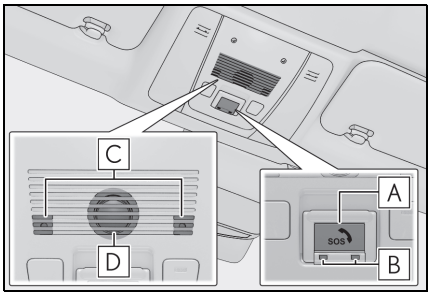
eCall*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: Operates within the eCall coverage.

eCall is a telematics service that uses Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: Automatic emergency calls (Automatic Collision Notification) and manual emergency calls (by pressing the "SOS" button). This service is required by United Arab Emirates Regulations.

System components



A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

D Speaker

*: This button is intended for communication with the eCall system operator. Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the eCall system operator.

Emergency Notification Services

■ Automatic Emergency Calls

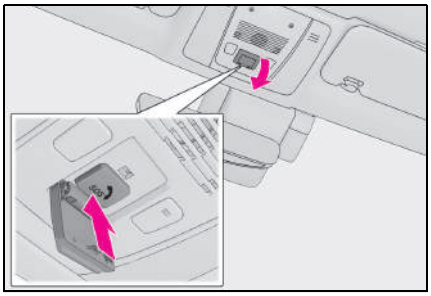
If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the eCall control center.* The answering operator receives the vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the operator automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts the nearest emergency services provider (999 system etc.) to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

■ Manual Emergency Calls

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the eCall control center.* The answering operator will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

Make sure to open the cover before pressing the "SOS" button.



If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the operator that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to ON, the red indicator light will illuminate for 10 seconds and then the green indicator light will illuminate, indicating that the system is enabled. The indicator lights indicate the following:

- If the green indicator light illuminates and stays on, the system is enabled.
- If the green indicator light flashes twice per second, an automatic or manual Emergency Call is being made.
- If no indicator lights illuminate, the system is not enabled.
- If the red indicator light illuminates at any time other than immediately after the engine switch is turned to ON, the system may be malfunctioning or the backup battery may be depleted.
- If the red indicator light blinks for approximately 30 seconds during an Emergency Call, the call has been disconnected or the cellular network signal is weak.

The service life of the backup battery does not exceed 3 years.

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

http://opensource.lge.com/

WARNING

When the Emergency Call may not be made

- It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (999 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the eCall control center if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, even though the system attempts to connect to the eCall control center, you may not be able to connect to the eCall control center to make Emergency Calls and contact emergency services.
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the Emergency Calls cannot be made.

WARNING

- When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, speaker, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the Emergency Call cannot be made.
- During an Emergency Call, the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the eCall control center. However, if it cannot connect to the eCall control center due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. The red indicator light will blink for approximately 30 seconds to indicate this disconnection.

● If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the eCall control center.

■ When the Emergency Call system is replaced with a new one

The Emergency Call system should be registered. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ For your safety

● Please drive safely.
The function of this system is to assist you in making the Emergency Call in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.

● In case of an emergency, make lives the top priority.

● If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.

● If the airbags deploy when the system is operating normally, the system makes emergency call. The system also makes emergency call when the vehicle is struck from the rear or rolls over, even if the airbags do not deploy.

● For safety, do not make the Emergency Call while driving.
Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before making the Emergency Call.

● When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.

● Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

■ If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an Emergency Call or manual maintenance check

It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls, confirm the system status, or communicate with the eCall control center operator. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult your Lexus dealer.

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

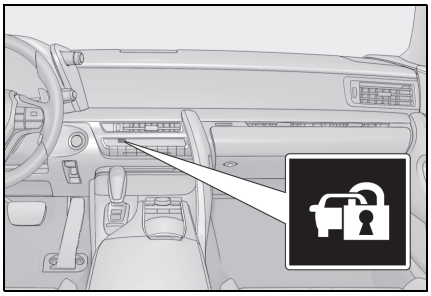
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

■ **Certifications for the engine immobilizer system**

▶ For vehicles sold in Dominican Republic

FCC ID:NI4TMIMB-3

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Indonesia



Dilarang melakukan perubahan
spesifikasi yang dapat
menimbulkan gangguan fisik
dan/atau elektromagnetik
terhadap lingkungan sekitarnya

▶ For vehicles sold in Korea



상호명/제조자	: Toyota Motor Corporation
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 미약전계강도 무선기기(TMIMB-3K6)
제조년월/제조국	: Shown on product./ Japan
식별부호	: NI4-TMIMB-3K1

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

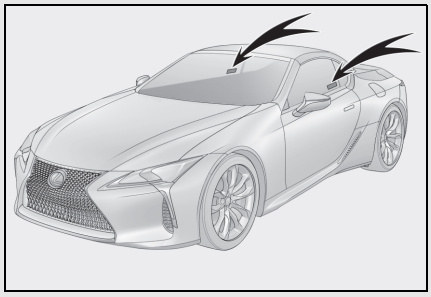
Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system*

*: If equipped

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the side windows.



Setting/canceling the double locking system

■ Setting

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that both side doors are closed.

Press  twice within 5 seconds.

■ Canceling

Using the entry function: Push the edge of the door handle to unlock the doors.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  .

WARNING

■ **Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because both side doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- Except for South Africa and Malaysia: A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- For South Africa and Malaysia: A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (Example: an intruder breaks a window and gets into the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination.

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

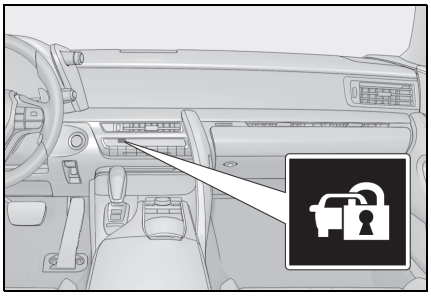
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Setting

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock both side doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

Except for South Africa and Malaysia, the alarm can also be set using the mechanical key.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Except for South Africa and Malaysia: Unlock the doors or open the trunk using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key.
- For South Africa and Malaysia: Unlock the doors using the entry

function or wireless remote control.

- Except for South Africa and Malaysia: Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or start the engine.
- For South Africa and Malaysia: Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

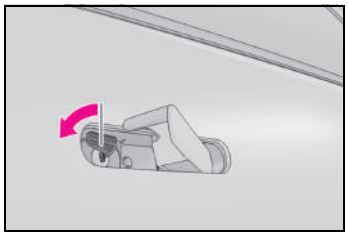
System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

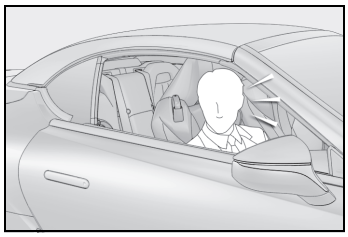
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

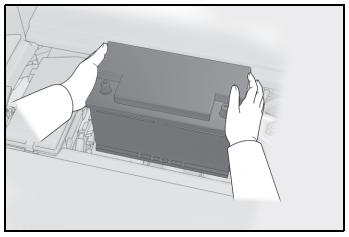
- For South Africa and Malaysia: The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using a door lock switch.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.394)



Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery

Customization

The alarm can be set to activate/deactivate when the mechanical key is used to unlock. (Customizable features: →P.420)

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not

guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.86)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

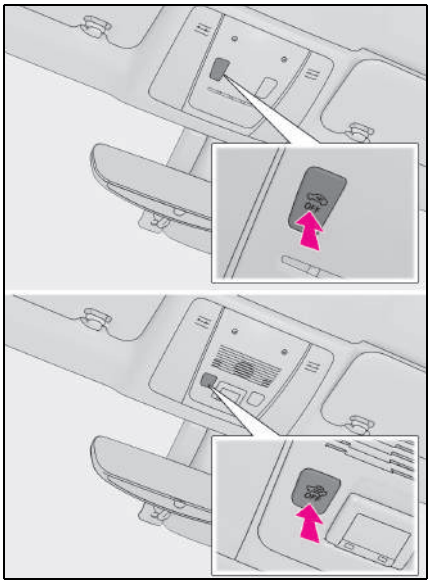
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as it will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

Press the switch again to re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.

Each time the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled/set, a message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.



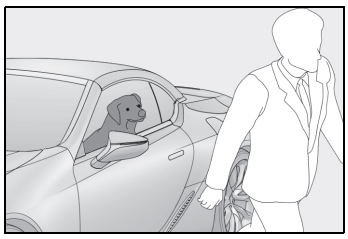
■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor. (Except for South Africa and Malaysia, the mechanical key can also be used.)
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

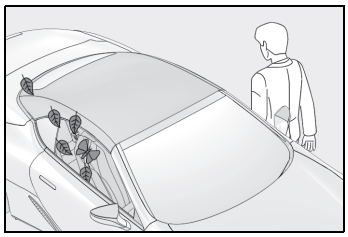
The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- People or pets are in the vehicle.

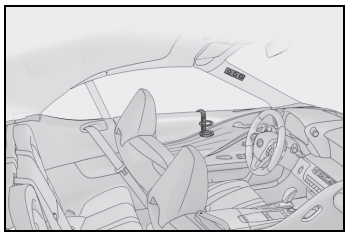


● A window or the soft top roof is open. In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

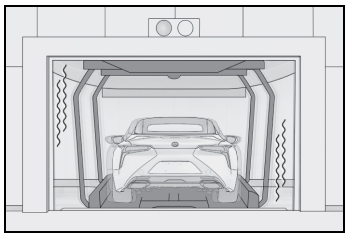
- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



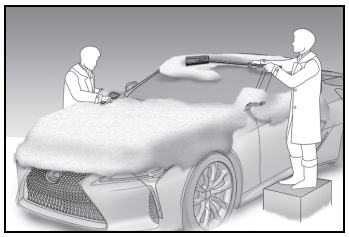
● Unstable items, such as dangling accessories, are in the vehicle.



● The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



● Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



● The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.

● The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

● The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.

● The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.

● The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.

● Any of the tires loses air pressure.

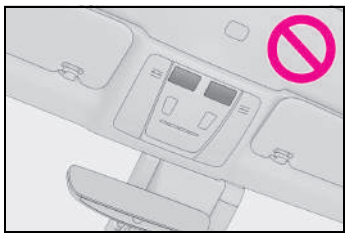
● The vehicle is jacked up.

● An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

NOTICE

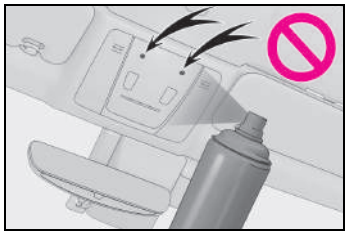
■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

● To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



NOTICE

- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

Vehicle status information and indicators

2

2-1. Instrument cluster

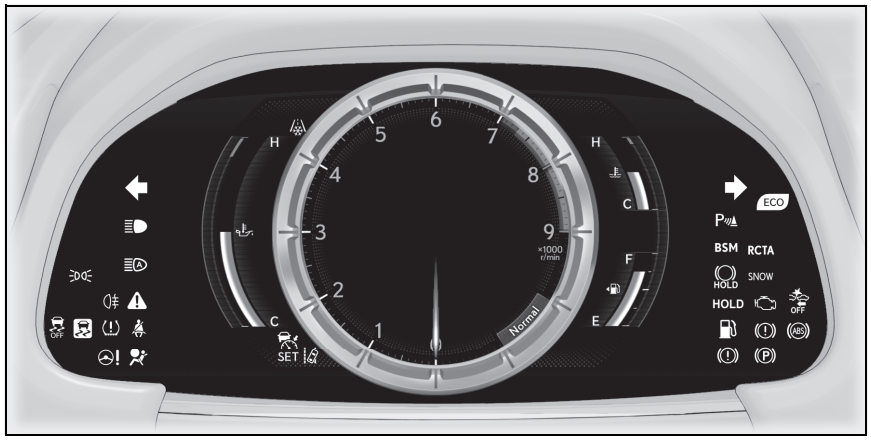
Warning lights and indicators..92
Gauges and meters 97
Multi-information display.....100
Head-up display 107
Fuel consumption information 111

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Instrument cluster

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustrations display all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle systems.

(red) Brake system warning light[*1] (→P.371)

Charging system warning light[*2] (→P.371)

Low engine oil pressure warning light[*2] (→P.372)

Malfunction indicator lamp[*1] (→P.372)

SRS warning light[*1] (→P.372)

ABS warning light[*1] (→P.372)

(red) Electric power steering system warning light[*1] (→P.373)

(yellow) Electric power steering system warning light[*1] (→P.373)

(Flashes or illuminates) (if equipped) PCS warning light[*1] (→P.373)


(orange) (if equipped)

LDA indicator*2/LKA indicator*2 (→P.374)



Slip indicator*1 (→P.374)



Brake Override System warning light*2 (→P.375)/Drive-Start Control warning light*2 (→P.375)



Brake hold operated indicator*1, 3 (→P.375)



Parking brake indicator*3 (→P.375)


(yellow)

Brake system warning light*1 (→P.375)



Low fuel level warning light (→P.376)



Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.376)



Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights*4 (→P.377)



Master warning light*1 (→P.377)



Tire pressure warning light*1, 3 (→P.377)



High coolant temperature warning light*2 (→P.378)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

*4: This light illuminates on the center panel.

WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.



Turn signal indicator (→P.180)



Tail light indicator (→P.186)



Headlight high beam indicator (→P.188)


(If equipped)

Automatic High Beam indicator*1 (→P.189)


(If equipped)

Rear fog light indicator (→P.191)



Cruise control indicator*2 (→P.227, 237, 245)


(If equipped)
Dynamic radar cruise control indicator*2 (→P.227, 237)



Cruise control "SET" indicator*2 (→P.227, 237, 245)


(white)
(if equipped)
LDA indicator*2 (→P.219)/LKA indicator*2 (→P.211)


(green)
(if equipped)
LDA indicator*2 (→P.219)/LKA indicator*2 (→P.211)


(orange)
(if equipped)
LDA indicator*2, 3 (→P.219)/LKA indicator*2, 3 (→P.211)


Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (→P.249)


Slip indicator*1, 3 (→P.266)



VSC OFF indicator*1 (→P.267)



(if equipped)
PCS warning light*1, 4 (→P.203)


(If equipped)
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) outside rear view mirror indicators*5, 6 (→P.254)



(If equipped)
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) indicator (→P.254)



(If equipped)
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) indicator (→P.254)



Brake hold standby indicator*1 (→P.184)



Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.184)


Security indicator*7 (→P.83, 86)


Smart entry & start system indicator*2 (→P.388)


Low outside temperature indicator*2, 8 (→P.97)



Eco Driving Indicator Light*1 (→P.95)


Parking brake indicator (→P.181)



(If equipped)
Snow mode indicator (→P.178)



"Normal" indicator*2 (→P.248)



"Eco" indicator*2 (→P.248)



"Sport S" indicator*2 (→P.248)



"Sport S+" indicator*2 (→P.248)



"Comfort" indicator*2 (→P.248)



"Custom" indicator*2 (→P.248)



(If equipped)
"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator*7 (→P.53)

*1: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to ON to indicate that a system check is being performed. They

will turn off after the engine is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*3: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*4: The light comes on when the system is turned off.

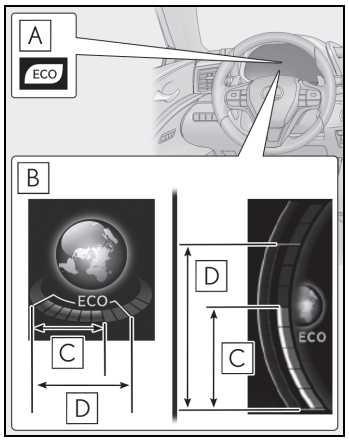
*5: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:
When the engine switch is turned to ON while the BSM main switch is turned on.
When the BSM main switch is turned on while the engine switch is in ON.
If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.
If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system.
If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*6: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*7: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*8: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

Eco Driving Indicator can be enabled on the multi-information display. (→P.100)

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

When the driving mode is Normal mode or Comfort mode, switch the display to the side position. (→P.100)

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

The part that exceeds the Zone of Eco driving illuminates in white.

D Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

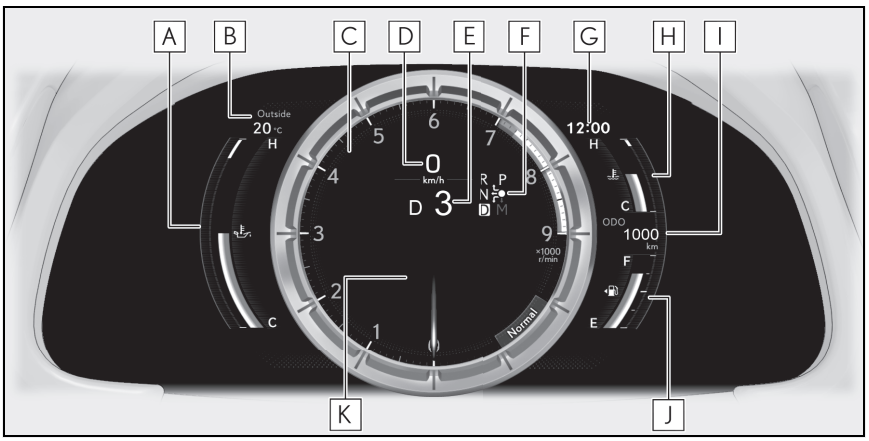
- The shift position is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.

- The driving mode is SPORT S mode or SPORT S+ mode.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Gauges and meters

When the main meter is in the side position, some of the meter displays and the gauge layout will be changed.

Meter display



A Engine oil temperature gauge/Eco Driving Indicator

Displays the engine oil temperature or Eco Driving Indicator (→P.95)

B Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

D Speedometer

E Shift position/shift range/gear position (→P.173)

F Shift position indicator (→P.175)

G Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the instrument panel. (→P.300)

H Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature
If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator enters the red zone, a buzzer sounds

and the high coolant temperature warning light comes on

I Odometer and trip meter display

Odometer:
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset
Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently

J Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

K Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.100)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.380)

■ **Rev indicator**

When the engine reaches a set speed or the red zone, a ring-shaped indicator will be displayed on the tachometer.

The indicator will be displayed in amber (A) when the engine speed reaches a set speed, and in red (B) when the engine speed reaches the red zone. This setting can be enabled on the multi-information display. (→P.105)



■ **Rev peak**

When the engine speed reaches or exceeds the 3600 r/min, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approximately 1 second.



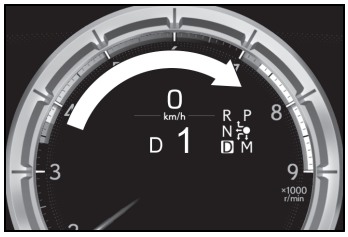
■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Variable red zone**

To help protect the engine, the engine speed is controlled by starting the red zone of the tachometer at different engine speeds ranging from 3700 r/min to 7300 r/min depending on the engine coolant temperature.

Before driving under extremely high load conditions, make sure to sufficiently warm up the engine.



■ **Instrument panel brightness adjustment**

The brightness of the instrument panel lights is automatically adjusted based on the light sensor detecting how bright the surroundings are.

■ **Outside temperature display**

● In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

● When "- -" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning.
Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Pop-up display**

● In some situations, such as when a switch operation is performed, a pop-up display will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

● Some pop-up displays can be set on/off. (→P.105)

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Customization**

The meter display can be customized on the multi-information display. (→P.420)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

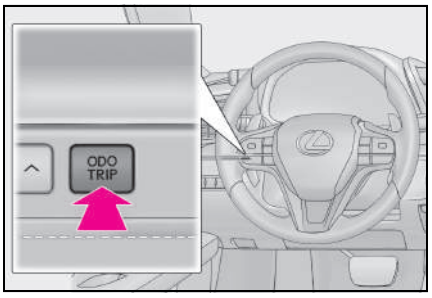
● Do not let the indicator of the tachometer enter the red zone, as it represents the engine speed range which exceeds the maximum safe engine speed.

● In the following situations, the engine may be overheating. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.404)

- The engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H).
- The engine oil temperature gauge is in the red zone (H).

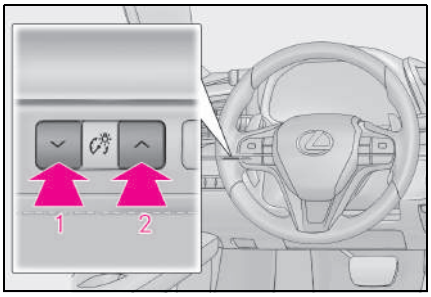
Changing between the odometer and trip meter

The odometer and trip meter displays can be switched. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.



Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



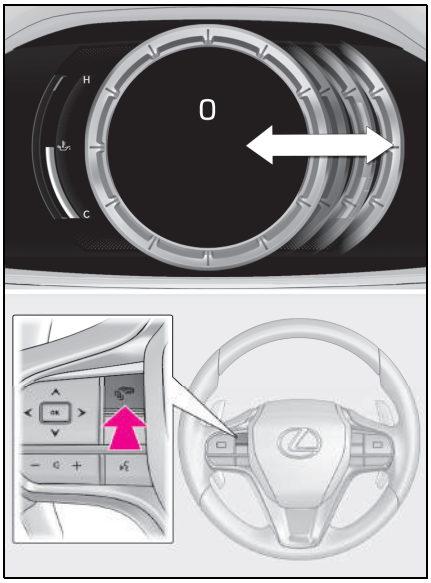
1 Darker
2 Brighter

■ Instrument panel brightness adjustment

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

Changing the display

The display can be switched between the center and side positions.



Multi-information display

Display and menu icons

■ Display

▶ When the main meter is in the center position

Displays various drive information on the main meter.

Some of the content which are displayed when the main meter is in the side position cannot be displayed.

▶ When the main meter is in the side position

Selecting a menu icon displays a variety of vehicle data or allows vehicle settings to be customized.



■ Menu icons

	Drive information (→P.102)
	Navigation system-linked display (if equipped) (→P.104)
	Audio system-linked display (→P.104)
	Driving assist system information (→P.104)

Warning message display (→P.380)

Settings display (→P.104)

■ Opening image display

When the engine switch is in ACC or ON, the opening image is displayed on the multi-information display.

While the opening image is being displayed, the meter display cannot be changed even if the drive mode is changed. When the opening image is finished, the meter display for the currently selected mode will be displayed.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

Record of the maximum G-forces will be reset.

■ Liquid crystal display

→P.99

WARNING

■ Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

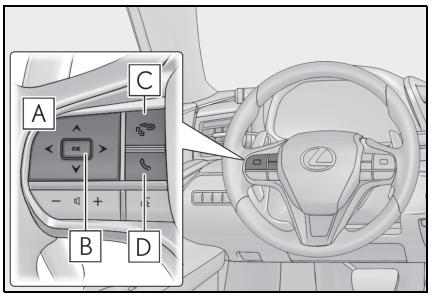
■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



A ＜/＞: Switch menu

∧/∨: Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

C Return to the previous screen and move the main meter

D Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending

or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Drive information

Content of drive information

Select to display various drive data.

Up to 2 of the following items can be selected.

Items displayed can be switched by pressing ◄ or ► of the meter control switches to select ⓘ and then pressing ▲ or ▼.

- Current fuel consumption*1

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

- Average fuel economy (after reset*2/after start/after refuel)*1

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset, the engine was started, and the vehicle was refueled, respectively

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

- Average speed (after reset*2/after start)*1

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

- Elapsed time (after reset*2/after start)*1

Displays the elapsed time since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

- Distance (range/after start)*1

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining and the distance driven after the engine was started respectively.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

*1: Displayed when the item is set in "Drive Info 1" or "Drive Info 2".

*2: The function can be reset by pressing "OK" of the meter control switches for longer than 1 second when the item to reset is displayed.
If there is more than one item that can be reset, the item selection screen will appear.

Eco Driving Indicator/engine oil temperature gauge

→P.95, 97

Tire pressure

→P.337

Gear positions

Displays the current shift range or gear position when the shift position is in D or M.

■ Units

The units of measure used can be changed while driving.

Unlike the units setting performed on the settings display, the units setting performed on the drive information menu can be changed while driving.

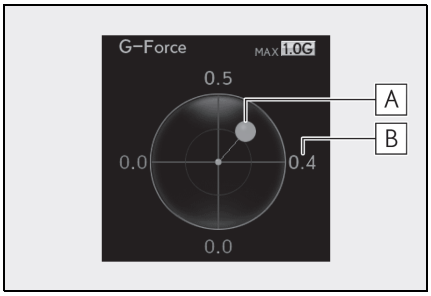
■ G-force

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle

● Reading the display

• Normal display

Displays the following on the multi-information display



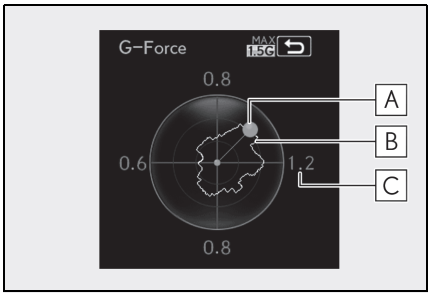
A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

• Advanced display

Displays the following on the multi-information display and main meter

Multi-information display:



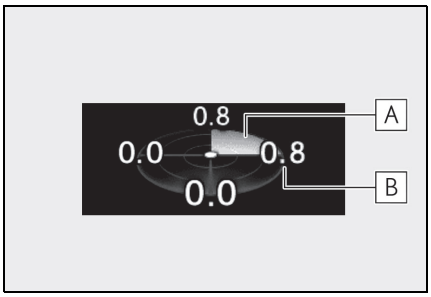
A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Record of the maximum G-forces

C Value of the maximum G-force since display reset (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

Main meter:



A G-force direction

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

● Switching the display

To switch to advanced display, press "OK".

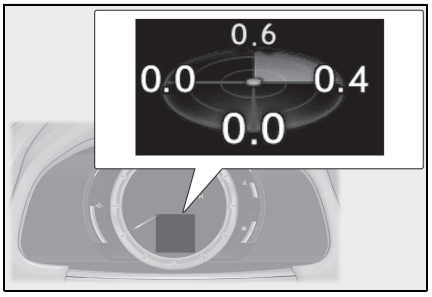
To return to normal display, press "OK".

- Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

With the record of maximum G-forces displayed, press and hold "OK" to reset the display.

- Peak hold function (advanced display only)

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value displayed on the main meter will turn yellow and be held for 3 seconds.



■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert)/LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) vehicle sway warning (if equipped)**

→P.212, 220

■ **Display off**

A blank screen is displayed

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance
- Compass display

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source etc. on the meter using the meter control switches.

Driving assist system information

Select to display the following system information when the system is used.

- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.227)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.237)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped) (→P.211)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped) (→P.219)

Warning message display

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected. (→P.380)

Settings display

Select to change the meter display settings.

■ **Language**

Select to change the language on the display.

■ **Units**

Select to change the unit of measure

for fuel consumption.

■ **Eco Driving Indicator Light**

Select to activate/deactivate the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

■ **Drive information 1/Drive information 2**

Select up to 2 items that will be displayed on the "Drive Info 1" screen and "Drive Info 2" screen respectively. (→P.102)

■ **Pop-up display**

Select to set the following pop-up displays, which may appear in some situations, on/off.

- Route guidance display of the navigation system-linked system (if equipped)
- Making call display of the hands-free phone system
- Audio system operation display
- Instrument panel brightness adjustment display

■ **Ring position memory**

Select to change the meter ring position when the engine is started.

The position before the engine is stopped or the center position can be selected.

■ **Accent color**

Select to change the accent color on the screen, such as the cursor color.

■ **Rev indicator**

Select to set the rev indicator on/off.

When set to on, proceed to select the engine speed at which the rev indicator will be displayed.

■ **Rev peak**

Select to set the rev peak on/off.

■ **Clock**

Select to switch between 12-hour display and 24-hour display.

■ **Initialization**

Select to reset the meter display settings.

■ **Suspension of the settings display**

In the following situations, operation of the settings display will be temporarily suspended.

- When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
- When the vehicle begins to move

■ **Customization**

The settings can be changed on ⚙ of the multi-information display.

- Settings of the driving assist systems (→P.420)
- Vehicle settings (→P.108, 341, 343, 420)

WARNING

■ **Cautions during setting up the display**

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ While setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. For some suggestions, a response to a displayed suggestion can be selected. To select a response, use the meter control switches.

The suggestion function can be turned on/off.

■ Suggestion to turn on the headlights

If the headlight switch is in other than or AUTO, and the vehicle speed is 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher for a certain amount of time when the surroundings are dark, a suggestion message will be displayed.

■ Suggestion to turn off the headlights

If the headlights are left on for a certain amount of time after the engine switch has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed.

When the headlight switch is in the AUTO position:

The message asking if you wish to turn the headlights off is displayed. To turn the headlights off, select "Yes".

If a door is opened after the engine switch is turned off, this suggestion message will not be displayed.

■ Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows. To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

■ Suggestion to unlock the power windows

If it is attempt to close the passenger's side window using the power window switch on the driver's door or all window control switch, a suggestion message will be displayed.

■ Customization

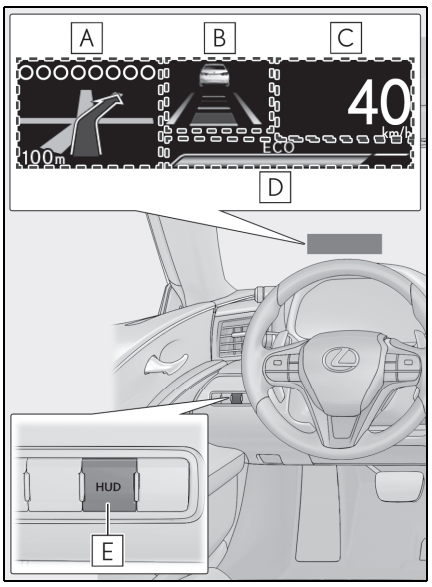
The suggestion function can be turned on/off. (Customizable features: →P.420)

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display is linked to the meters and navigation system and projects a variety of information in front of the driver, such as the current vehicle speed and route guidance to a set destination.

System components



A Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items, which are linked to the navigation system:
- Street name
- Route guidance to destination
- Compass

B Driving assist system status display area

Displays the current shift position, and shift range/gear position, or the operational status of the following systems:
- Pre-collision warning (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped) (→P.203)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.227)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.237)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped) (→P.211)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped) (→P.219)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.249)

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanations of each system.

C Vehicle speed display

D Information display area (→P.109)

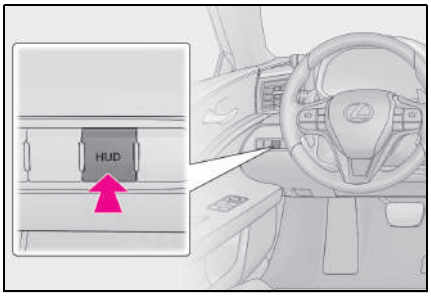
Displays the following items:
- Warning/message
- / icon (→P.109)
- Audio system operation status
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range status (if equipped) (→P.227)
- Hands-free system status (→P.109)
- Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer (→P.110)

E HUD (Head-up display) switch

Using the head-up display

■ Enabling/Disabling the head-up display

Pressing the switch turns the head-up display on/off.



■ Changing settings of the head-up display

Select ⚙ on the multi-information display (→P.100) to change the following settings:

● Display brightness/position

Select to adjust the brightness and position of the head-up display.

● Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer

Select to display Eco Driving Indicator, tachometer or no content.

● Display content

Select to enable/disable the following items:

- Route guidance to destination (if equipped)
- Driving assist system status
- Compass
- Audio system operation status

● Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ Head-up display

● The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

● When the head-up display is turned off, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to ACC or ON after the engine switch has been turned off.

● The startup image will be displayed on the head-up display after the engine switch has been turned to ON while the head-up display switch is set to on.

■ Display brightness

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on ⚙ of the multi-information display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ Head-up display automatic position adjustment

If the display position is recorded into memory, the head-up display will be automatically adjusted to the desired position. (→P.138)

■ When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. display) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using the head-up display

● Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

● Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

WARNING

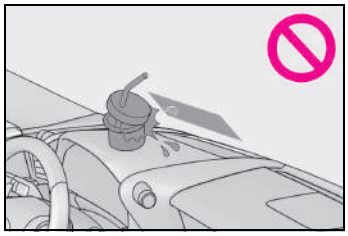
■ **Caution for changing settings of the head-up display**

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to components**

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.



- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

■ **When changing the settings of the head-up display**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Information display area

Displays the following items in the appropriate situation:

■ **Warning/message**

Displays the following warning/messages:

- Master warning message
- Notification message (Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range/dynamic radar cruise control)
- Other messages

■ **/ icons**

Displays the following multi-information display linked icons:

: Master warning icon

Displayed when a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.380)

: Information icon

Displayed when a suggestion/advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.106)

■ **Hands-free system status**

Displayed when the hands-free system is operated.

■ **Audio system operation status**

Displayed when the audio system is operated.

■ **Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer**

Displays either of Eco Driving Indicator or the tachometer.

Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

■ **Street name**

When the navigation system is performing route guidance, the name of the next street will be displayed on the top of the display area.

■ **Route guidance to destination**

Displayed when the navigation system is performing route guidance. When approaching an intersection, an arrow will be displayed to indicate the suggested direction of travel.

■ **Compass**

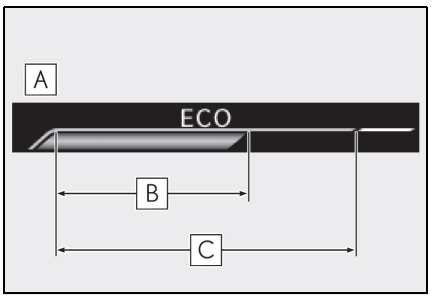
Displays the direction of travel.

■ **Street name display**

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

Eco Driving Indicator/tachometer

■ **Eco Driving Indicator**



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

C Zone of Eco driving

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P.95.

■ **Tachometer**

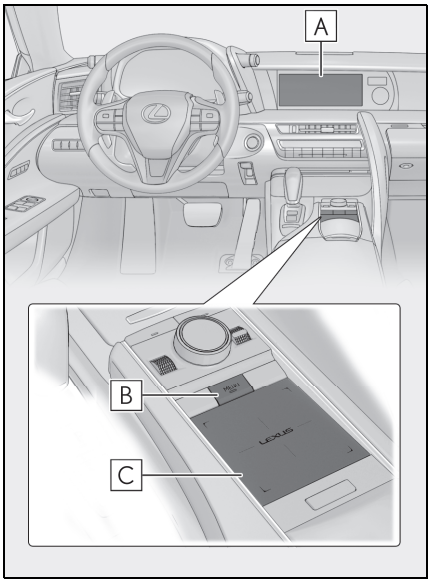
Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Center Display.

The consumption screen can be displayed on the side display.

System components



A Center Display

B "MENU" button

C Touchpad

Consumption

▶ Except for Hong Kong

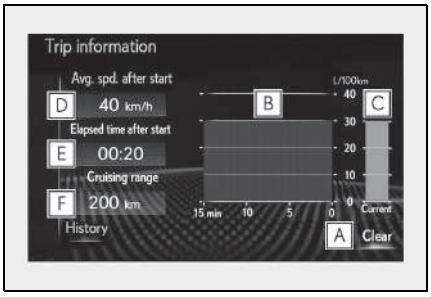
Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the menu screen, and then select "Trip information" or "History".

▶ For Hong Kong

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the menu screen.

■ **Trip information**

If a screen other than "Trip information" is displayed, select "Trip Information".



A Resetting the consumption data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Elapsed time since the engine was started.

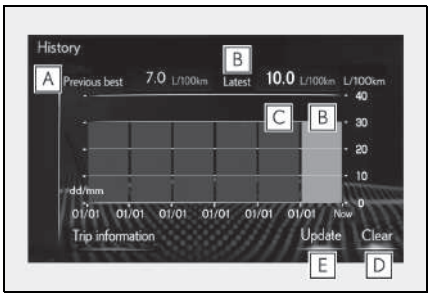
F Cruising range

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to ON. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

History

If a screen other than "History" is displayed, select "History".



A Best recorded fuel consumption

B Latest fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

The latest fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Updating the history data

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

Resetting the data

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear".

Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

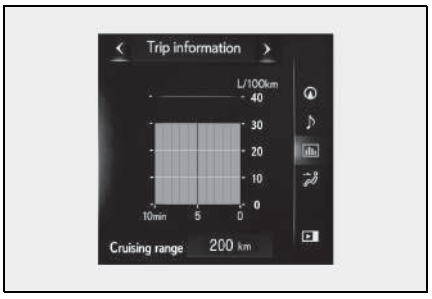
This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

Using the side display

Display the vehicle information on the side display (→P.279), and then select ❮ or ❯ to display the desired screen.

Trip information (type A)

Displays the average fuel consumption for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.

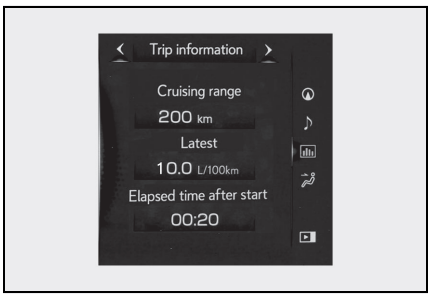


The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Trip information (type B)

Displays the cruising range, latest fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the engine was started.

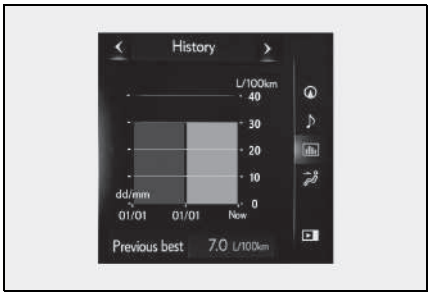


The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

History

Displays the average fuel consumption, last average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.



The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

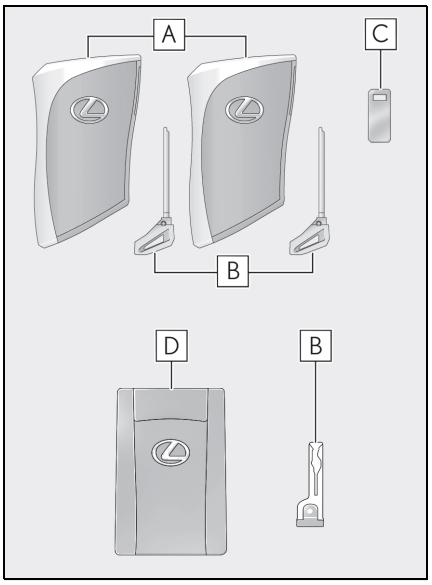
Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

3-1. Key information
Keys 116
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Doors 120
Trunk 124
Smart entry & start system 128
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 136
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints 142
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 143
Inside rear view mirror 144
Outside rear view mirrors 145
3-5. Opening, closing the windows
Power windows 148
3-6. Opening and closing the soft top roof
Soft top roof 152

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.128)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

B Mechanical keys

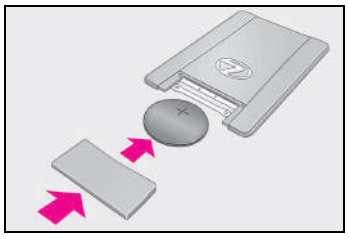
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.128)

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is from one year to one year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine is stopped.
- Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance. (→P.130)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P.353)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.

- The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.

You can replace the battery by yourself (→P.353). However, as there is a danger that the electronic key may be damaged, it is recommended that the replacement be carried out by your Lexus dealer.

● To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
- TVs
- Personal computers
- Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
- Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
- Table lamps
- Induction cookers

■ Replacing the battery

→P.353

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

■ If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately 10 days after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

● Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.

● Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.

● Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.

● Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.

● Do not disassemble the keys.

● Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.

● Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.

● Do not place the keys near medical electrical equipment such as low-frequency therapy equipment or microwave therapy equipment, and do not receive medical attention with the keys on your person.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.387

■ When an electronic key is lost

→P.386

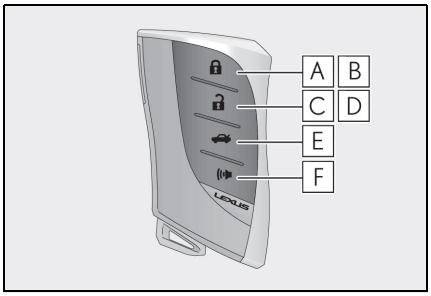
NOTICE

■ Handling the card key (if equipped)

- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover.
  Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks the doors (→P.120)

B Except for Korea: Closes the windows* (→P.120)

C Unlocks the doors (→P.120)

D Except for Korea: Opens the windows* (→P.120)

E Opens the trunk (→P.126)

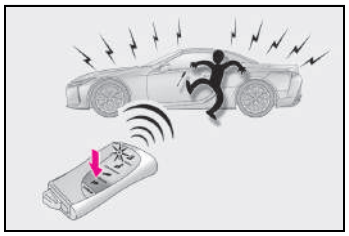
F Sounds the alarm (if equipped)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Theft deterrent panic mode (if equipped)

When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

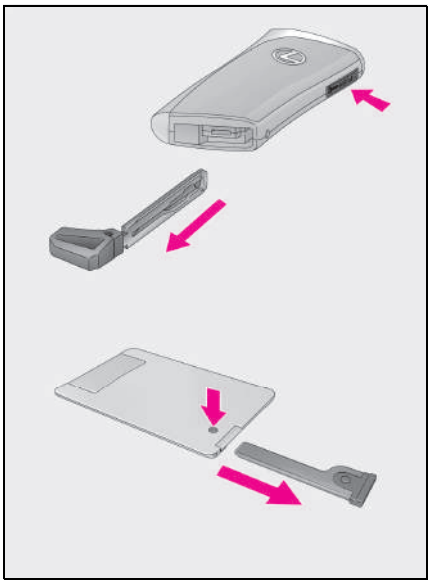


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.387)



When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box (→P.297) as circumstances demand.
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

If you lose your mechanical keys

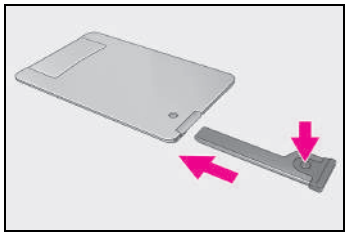
→P.386

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

Card key (if equipped)

- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc. (→P.119)
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the release button.



NOTICE

Handling the card key (if equipped)

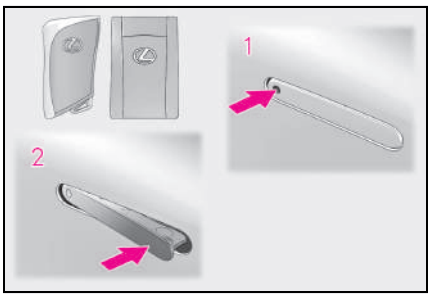
Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Push the depression on the front edge of the door handle to unlock the doors.

Some models: Push the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle to unlock the door.

Push the depression on the front edge of the passenger's door handle to unlock both side doors.*

The outside door handles will be extended.The extended outside door handles are automatically retracted in approximately 60 seconds.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

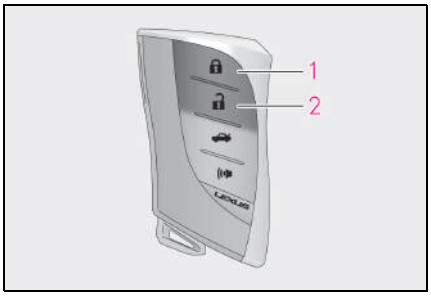
*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

2 Push the rear edge of the extended door handle to lock the doors.

If the outside door handles are extended, they will be retracted.

After locking the doors, check that the door is securely locked with the door lock indicator (→P.123).

■ Wireless remote control



1 Locks both side doors

The outside door handles will be retracted if they have been extended.

After locking the doors, check that the door is securely locked with the door lock indicator (→P.123).

Except for Korea: Press and hold to close the windows.*

2 Unlocks both side doors

Type A: Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 5 seconds unlocks the other door.

The outside door handles will be extended.

Type B: Press and hold to close the windows.*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Side window open/close function linked to door operation

When a door is opened, its window opens slightly. When a door is closed, its window closes completely.

■ Speed-linked outside door handle retracting function

When the vehicle speed reaches 10 km/h (6 mph), the outside door handles will be retracted.

■ **To extend the outside door handles retracted automatically**

The outside door handle can be extended by pushing the depression on the front edge of it. To lock the doors, push the rear edge of the outside door handle after extending it once.

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (→P.88)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step **3**.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
*1  *2  Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Pushing the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
	Pushing the depression on the front edge of the passenger's door handle unlocks both side doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Pushing the depression on the front edge of either door handle unlocks both side doors.

*1: Left-hand drive vehicles

*2: Right-hand drive vehicles

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.86)

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, both side doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Operation signals**

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Some models: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once, Unlocked: twice)

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows are operating.

Depending on the opening/closing state of the soft top roof, the buzzer may be delayed.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Setting the alarm**

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.86)

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control**

→P.130

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.387)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.353)

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The doors cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key. (→P.387)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.

(Customizable features: →P.420)

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident**

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant being thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that both side doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside door handle while driving.
  Type A: The doors may be opened even if they are locked.
  Type B: The driver's door may opened even if they are locked.

■ **Side window open/close function linked to door operation**

Do not hold the upper edge of the side window when you close the door. Otherwise, your fingers or hand may be caught in the window.

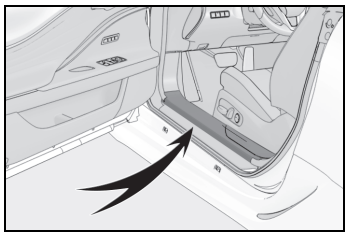
■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows (except for Korea)**

Operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.

WARNING

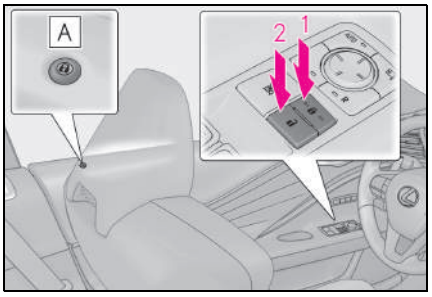
■ When entering and exiting the vehicle

Do not step on the scuff plate. Slipping on the surface may result in injury.



Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ Door lock switches



1 Locks both side doors

The indicator A comes on.

2 Unlocks both side doors

The indicator A turns off.

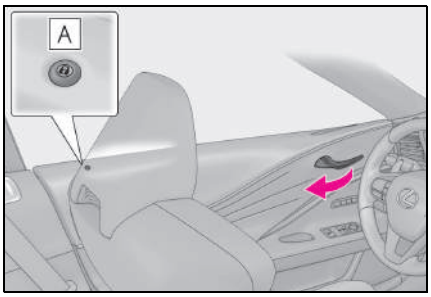
■ Inside door handles

Pull the inside door handle to unlock the door.

Type A: The doors can be opened by pulling the inside door handle even if the door lock indicator A illuminates.

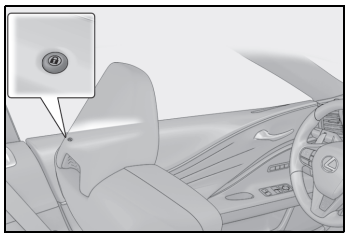
The door lock indicator A turns off.

Type B: The driver's door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle even if the door lock indicator A illuminates.



■ Door lock indicator

The door lock indicator turns on when the door is locked. If the door lock indicator illuminates for more than 30 seconds while the engine switch is off, the door lock indicator will automatically turn off.



■ If a symbol indicating one or both side doors open is shown on the multi-information display

The hood, one or both side doors, or trunk is not fully closed. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) are not fully closed. Make sure to close hood, both side doors and trunk.

■ Customization

The time elapsed before the door lock indicator turns off can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.420.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	Both side doors are automatically locked when the shift position is shifted to a position other than P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when the shift position is shifted to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	Both side doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened within approximately 45 seconds after turning the engine switch off.

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener switch, entry function or wireless remote control.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

■ Important points while driving

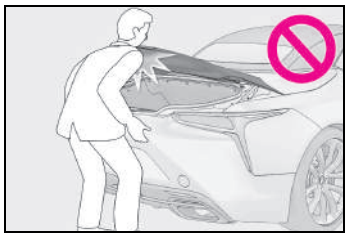
Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ Using the trunk

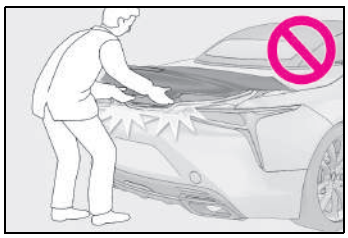
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

WARNING

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- On an incline it is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When opening the trunk lid, take care so that it does not hit anyone in the face or any other part of the body.



- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.



- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk grip is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the trunk damper stay to close the trunk, and do not hang on the trunk damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the trunk damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

NOTICE

■ Trunk damper stays

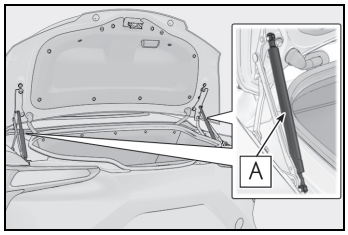
The trunk is equipped with damper stays [A] that hold the trunk lid in place.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the trunk damper stay [A], resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid.

NOTICE

● Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

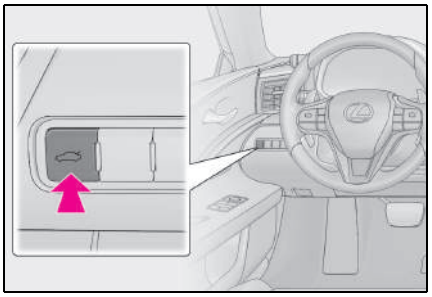


Opening the trunk

■ Trunk opener switch

Press the trunk opener switch.

When the doors has been locked using the entry function or wireless remote control, the trunk cannot be opened.

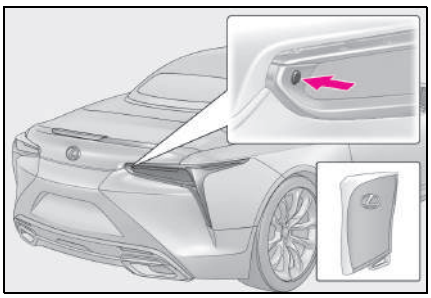


■ Smart entry & start system

While carrying the electronic key, press the button.

When both side doors are unlocked using one of the following methods, the trunk can be opened without the electronic key:

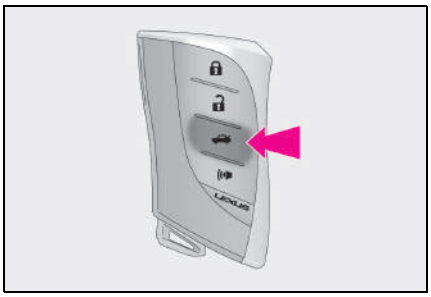
- Entry function
- Wireless remote control
- Door lock switches
- Automatic door unlocking system
- Mechanical key



■ Wireless remote control

Press and hold the switch.

Some models: A buzzer sounds.



■ When the operation of the soft top roof has not been completed

The trunk lid cannot be opened. Wait until the soft top roof is fully opened or closed before opening the trunk lid. (→P.152)

■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside

● When both side doors are locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.

● If the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with both side doors locked, the key confinement prevention function is acti-

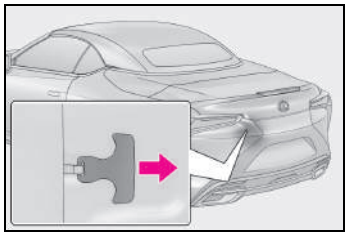
vated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.

- If the electronic key is put in the trunk with both side doors locked, the key may not be detected depending on the location of the key and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the trunk to be locked when the trunk lid is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if either door is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener switch.
- If the trunk lid is closed by a hand having the electronic key when the both side doors are locked, a warning buzzer may sound. In this case, the trunk is not locked. Do not close the trunk lid by a hand having the electronic key.

■ **Internal trunk release lever (for Korea)**

The trunk lid can be opened by pulling the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk to the side.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.



■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the trunk opener switch to unlock the trunk. (→P.387)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.353)

■ **If a symbol indicating the trunk opens is shown on the multi-information display**

→P.123

■ **If the battery is discharged**

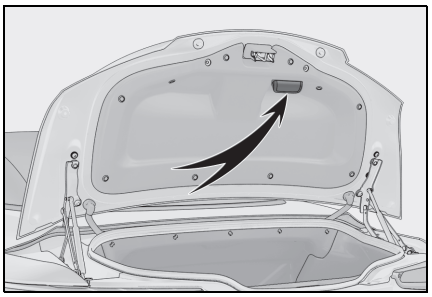
The trunk cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the trunk using the mechanical key. (→P.389)

■ **Customization**

The trunk unlocking operation can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

Closing the trunk

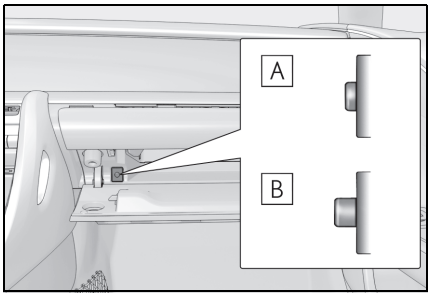
Using the trunk grip, lower the trunk without applying force to the side and push the trunk down from the outside to close it.



Protecting luggage against theft

The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the trunk opener main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.



A On

B Off

When the trunk opener main switch is off, the trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or entry function.

■ When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

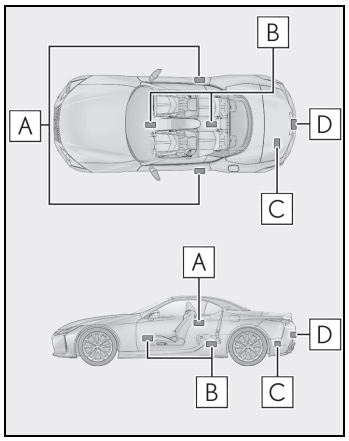
→P.119

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.120)
- Opens the trunk (→P.126)
- Starts the engine (→P.170)

■ Antenna location



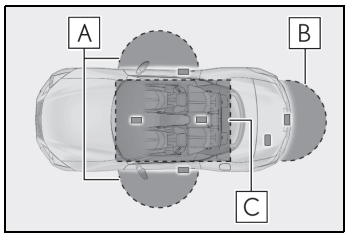
A Antennas outside the cabin

B Antennas inside the cabin

C Antenna inside the trunk

D Antenna outside the trunk

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When opening the trunk
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

C When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes
The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed**

An alarm sounds and warning messages are displayed on the multi-information display to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message.

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

● When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and both side doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close both side doors and lock the doors again.

● When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACC while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACC).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.
The engine switch was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

■ **If "Key Detected in Vehicle" is shown on the multi-information display**

An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle. Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to

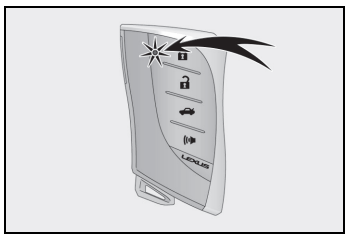
unlock the doors.
- The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at the passenger door. In this case, push the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ **Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode**

● When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.
While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used.
To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



● Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.387)

● When the electronic key battery is depleted

● Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise

● When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

● When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
- Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
- Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
- Metallic wallets or bags
- Coins
- Hand warmers made of metal
- Media such as CDs and DVDs

● When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby

● When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
- Another electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
- Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
- Digital audio players
- Portable game systems

● If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

● When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

● When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted.

■ **Note for the entry function**

● Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
- The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
- The electronic key is near the ground or

in a high place, or too close to the center of the rear bumper when the trunk is opened.
- The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.

● Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the doors will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.

● As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.

● Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.

● The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash, when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

● If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

● Some models: When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.

● If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
- Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.129)

● If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock both side doors.

● If an outside door handle is not retracted during a car wash, a door may be opened or an outside door handle may be damaged. Make sure that the outside door handles are retracted before using the car wash.

● A sudden handle operation or a handle operation immediately after entering the effective range may prevent the doors from being unlocked. Touch the door unlock sensor and check that the doors are unlocked before pulling the door handle again.

● Unlocking the vehicle may take more time if another electronic key is within the effective range.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

● To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.

● The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance.

■ To operate the system properly

● Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not oper-

ate.)

- Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.
  The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P.126)

■ **If an electronic key does not work properly**

- If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked and the trunk cannot be opened, perform the following.
  - Doors: Bring the electronic key close to the door handle and perform a lock or unlock operation.
  - Trunk: Bring the electronic key close to the button on the trunk (→P.126) and press the button.
  - Use the wireless remote control.

If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked by perform the above, use the mechanical key. (→P.387)

For South Africa and Malaysia: However, if the mechanical key is used while the alarm system is set, the warning will sound. (→P.86)

- If the engine cannot be started, refer to P.388

■ **Customization**

Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following operations.

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.120, 126, 387)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.388
- Stopping the engine: →P.171

■ **Certification for the smart entry & start system**

▶ For vehicles sold in Korea

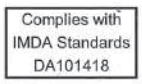
상호명/제조자	: DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 데이터전송용 무선기기(14FEG)
제조년월/제조국	: See product. / Japan
식별부호	: R-C-DKR-14FEG

상호명/제조자	: DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭(모델명)	: 데이터전송용 무선기기(14CEM)
제조년월/제조국	: See product. / Japan
식별부호	: R-C-DKR-14CEM

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



DENSO 14FCM



DENSO 14CCM

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Argentina

DENSO
14FFC

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE **COMUNICACIONES**

ID: H-23973

DENSO
14CCM

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE **COMUNICACIONES**

ID: H-24137

▶ For vehicles sold in Dominican Republic

FCC ID:NI4TMLF15-1

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC ID:HYQ23ABB
FCC ID:HYQ14FFC

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

<For 14FFC>
The FCC ID is affixed inside the equipment. You can find the ID when replacing the battery.

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa





WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.128)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

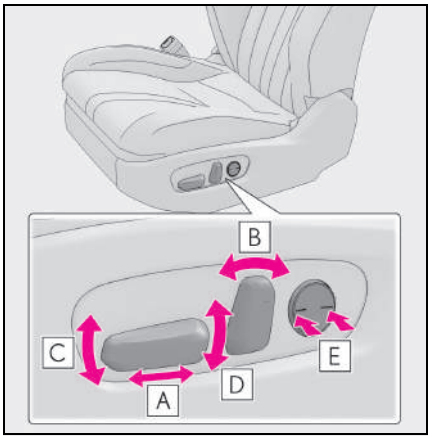
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

Adjustment procedure



A Seat position adjustment

B Seatback angle adjustment

C Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment

D Vertical height adjustment

E Lumbar support adjustment

■ When adjusting the seat

- Make sure that any surrounding passengers or objects are not contact the seat.
- Take care when adjusting the seat so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.

■ Seat-linked function

This function operates when the seat is moved forward, backward or in the reclining direction a certain distance or more.

■ Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.138)

⚠ WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Entering/exiting the rear seats (lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat)

■ Before entering/exiting the rear seats

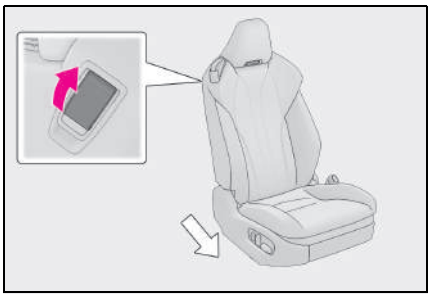
- Remove the seat belt from the seat belt guide. (→P.38)

● Stow the sun visor.

■ Entering/exiting the rear seat

1 Pull the lever.

The front seat will lower automatically.



2 Fold the seatback completely forward.

The front seat will move forward automatically.



■ Returning the front seat to its original position

Move the seatback backward until it locks. The front seat will return to its original position automatically.

■ Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat

● After the front seat is moved forward by operating the "Front, Fold & Return" seat lever, if a power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed, the front seat will not return to its original position even if the front seatback is moved backward until it locks.

● The lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will not operate in the following situations:
- The seat belt of the seat to be operated is fastened.
- The engine switch is in ON and the shift position is in a position other than P.

● Operation of the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat will stop in the following situations:
- A power seat adjusting switch or a driving position memory switch is pressed.
- The seat belt of the seat which is operating is fastened.
- The engine switch is in ON and the shift position is changed to a position other than P.

● If the front seat is close to the sun visor or other surrounding parts, frontwards and upwards movement may be restricted.

■ Jam protection function

While the driving position is recalling or the power easy access system is operating, if an object is stuck behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then move slightly forward.

While the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat is operating, if an object is stuck either in front of or behind the front seat, the front seat will stop and then move in the opposite direction slightly.

When the jam protection function operates, the seat stops at a position other than the set seat position. Check the seat position.

⚠ WARNING

■ Lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat

● Before operating the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat, ensure that any surrounding passengers or objects will not contact the seat.

● Make sure the seatback is locked securely before driving.

WARNING

- Never operate the lever-operated "Front, Fold & Return" seat while the vehicle is moving.

■ Jam protection function

Do not use a hand, foot, or any other part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

Driving position memory

This feature automatically adjusts the positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

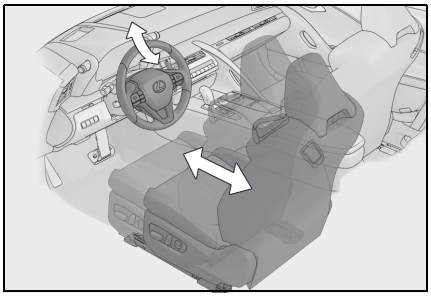
Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift position has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACC or ON.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Operation of the power easy access system

- When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.
- If the seat position is adjusted during the power easy access system operation, the automatic operating will stop. (The seat will change to manual operation.)
- If the seat position is adjusted during or after the power easy access system operation when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system will not operate when entering the vehicle.

■ Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

Recording a driving position into memory

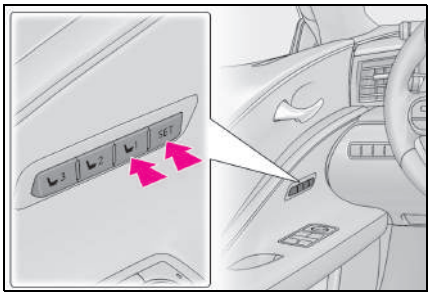
1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display to the desired positions.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



■ Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.136)

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded.

■ In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

⚠ WARNING

■ Seat adjustment caution

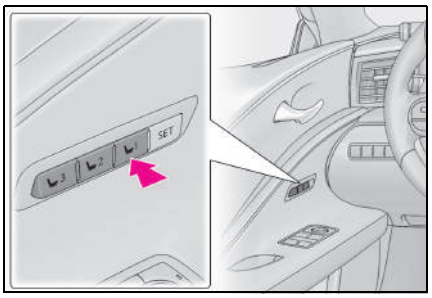
Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



To stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).
- Operate the head-up display position adjustment switch (if equipped) (only cancels head-up display position recall).

Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Registering/canceling/recalling a driving position to an electronic key (including a card key) (memory recall function)

Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

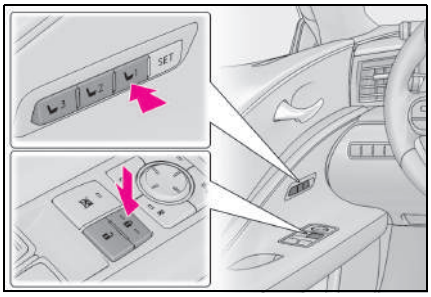
1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



Cancelation procedure

1 Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

2 Turn the engine switch to ON.

3 Check that the shift position is in P.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ **Recall procedure**

1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel and head-up display).

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC or ON, or fasten a seat belt.

The steering wheel and head-up display will move to the recorded position.

■ **Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function**

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If the passenger's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ **Customization**

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for front seats.

For removing and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

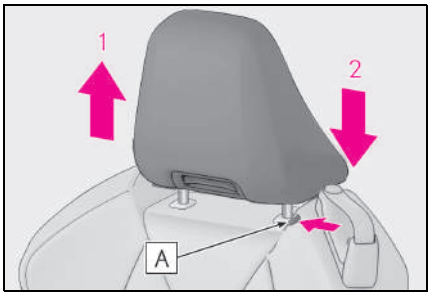
WARNING

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.

Vertical adjustment



1 Up

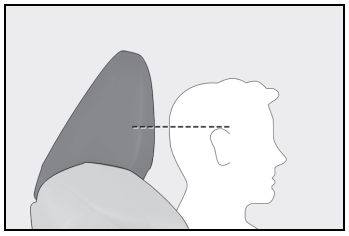
Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A .

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

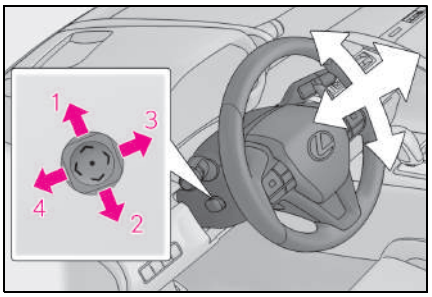
Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

The steering wheel can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.138)

Power easy access system

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.138)

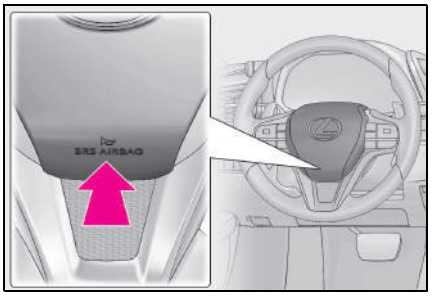
WARNING

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Sounding the horn

Press on or close to the mark.



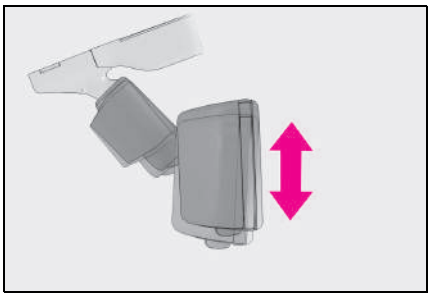
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

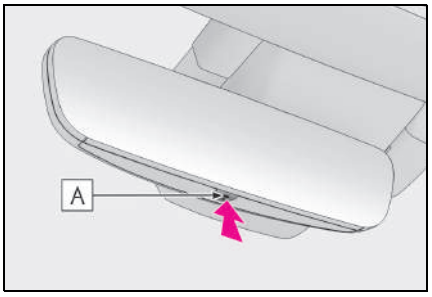
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

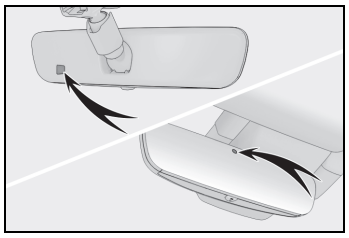
Turn the automatic anti-glare function mode on/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to ON. Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

WARNING

■ Important points while driving

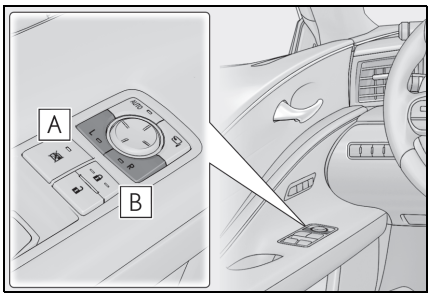
Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

The indicator comes on.

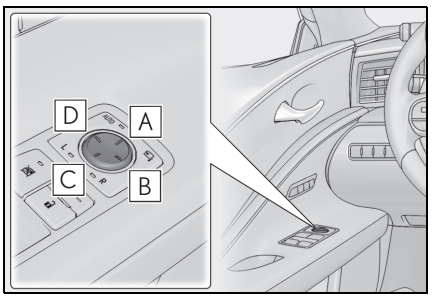


A Left

B Right

Pressing the same switch again will put the switch in neutral.

2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



A Up

B Right

C Down

D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

■ Defogging the mirrors (if equipped)

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.283)

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.144)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.138)

WARNING

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating (vehicles with outside rear view defoggers)

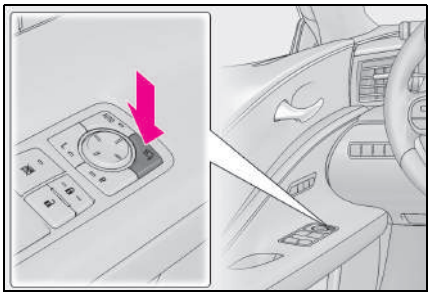
Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.



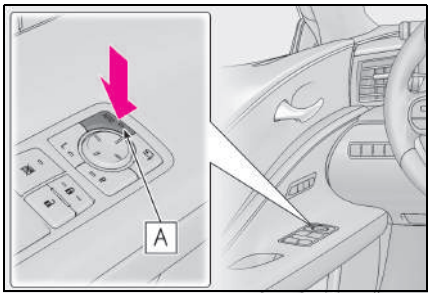
■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Press the "AUTO" switch to set automatic mode.

The indicator A will come on.

Pressing the switch once more will return to manual mode.



■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to off as default. To turn the function on, press the switch again to select on.

■ Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this case, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

■ Customization

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

WARNING

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Linked mirror function when reversing

When either "L" or "R" of the mirror select switch is selected, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view

of the ground. To disable this function, select neither “L” nor “R”.

■ **Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing**

With the shift position in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift position is shifted to R from next time.

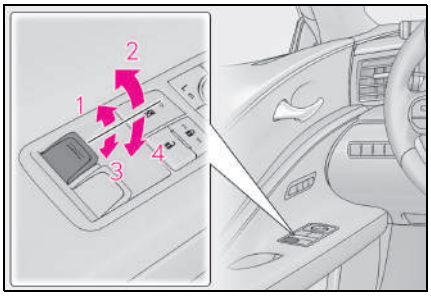
The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift position in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Power windows

Opening and closing the side windows

The side windows can be opened and closed by one-touch operation of the switches.



1 Closing

2 One-touch closing *1, 2

3 Opening

4 One-touch opening *1

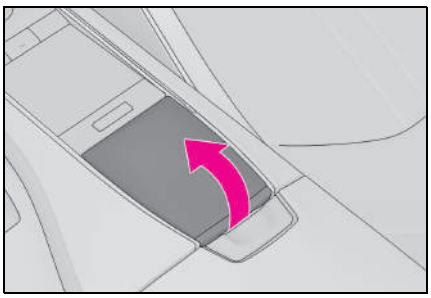
*1: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

*2: It does not operate when the rear quarter windows are stopped partway.

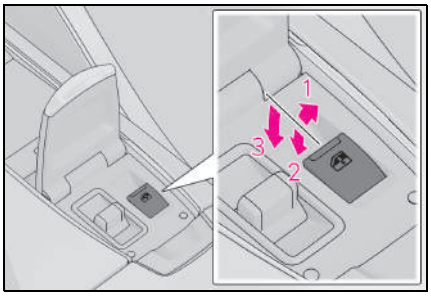
Opening and closing the side windows and rear quarter windows

The side windows and rear quarter windows can be opened and closed by one-touch operation *1 of the switches.

1 Opening the palm rest



2 Operating the switch



1 Closing

2 Opening

3 One-touch opening *2

*1: Only one-touch opening

*2: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACC or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the soft top roof while the win-

dow is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Catch protection function**

▶ Window

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

▶ Rear quarter window

If an object becomes caught between the rear quarter window and vehicle body while the rear quarter window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ **When the window cannot be opened or closed**

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in ON, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Close both side doors.
2. Turn the engine switch to ON.
3. Close the soft top roof, and then close the side windows and rear quarter windows.
4. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction for approximately 6 seconds or more.
5. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
6. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
7. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When the rear quarter windows cannot be opened or closed**

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the rear quarter window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the all window control switch.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in ON, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the all window control switch in the closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the rear quarter window can be opened and closed.
- If the rear quarter window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Close both side doors.
2. Turn the engine switch to ON.
3. Close the soft top roof, and then close the side windows.
4. Pull and hold the all window control switch in the closing direction for approximately 6 seconds or more.
5. Press and hold the all window control switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the side windows and rear quarter windows are completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
6. Release the all window control switch for a moment, resume pressing and holding the switch in the one-touch

opening direction for approximately 4 seconds or more.

7 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction to close the side windows.

8 Pull and hold the all window control switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the rear quarter windows are completely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the windows are moving, start again from the beginning. If the windows reverse and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.387)
- Except for Korea: The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.120)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Power windows open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and "Window Open" is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.151)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control (except for Korea) or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

WARNING

■ **Catch protection function**

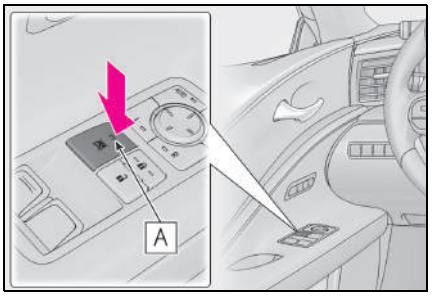
- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window and rear quarter window.

Press the switch.

The indicator A will come on and the passenger window and rear quarter window will be locked.



■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

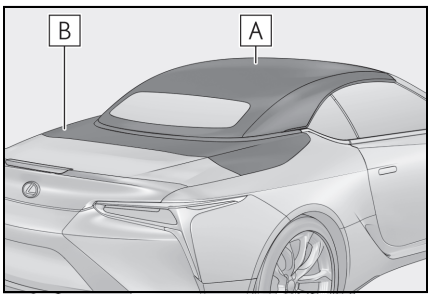
The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

Soft top roof

The soft top roof can be opened or closed by the switch operation.

System components

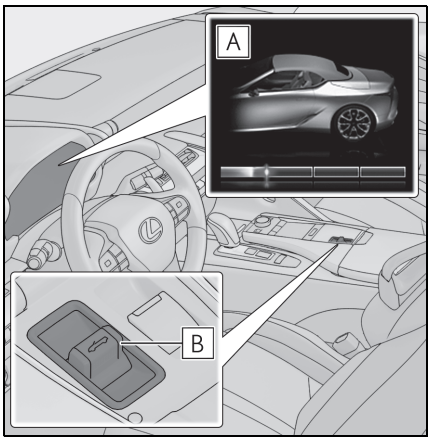
▶ Exterior



A Soft top roof

B Luggage cover

▶ Interior

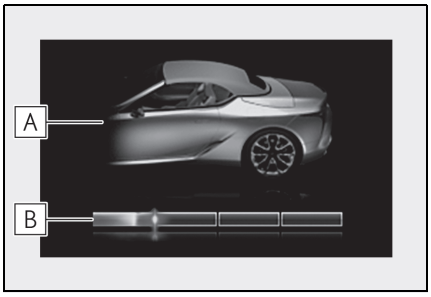


A Multi-information display (→P.100)

Displays opening/closing status of the soft top roof.

B Roof switch

Multi-information display



A Operation display of the soft top roof

Displays operating parts of the soft top roof linked to operation of the roof switch.

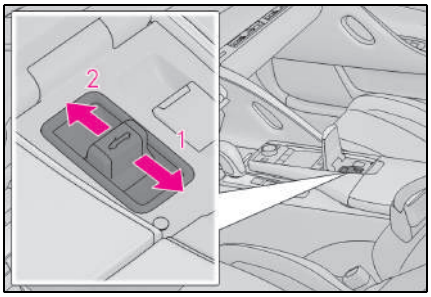
B Bar display

The bar is displayed linked to the operation display. The bar will turn to gray when the operation of the soft top roof has completed.

Opening or closing the soft top roof

1 Open the palm rest. (→P.148)

2 Operate the switch.



1 Open

2 Close

The side windows and rear quarter windows operate linked to opening or closing the soft top roof.

Opening/closing status of the soft top roof will be displayed on the multi-information display.

When the operation of the soft top roof has completed, the bar will turn to gray and the buzzer will sound.

Continuing to operate the roof switch fully closes the side windows and rear quarter windows.

■ **Operational conditions**

- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) (However, it is recommended that the soft top roof is opened or closed when the vehicle is stopped.)
- The engine is running (The soft top roof can operate with the engine switch in ON, however, in order to prevent battery discharge, it is recommended to start the engine.)
- The trunk lid is closed

■ **Situations in which the soft top roof operation stops partway**

In the following situation, operation of the soft top roof stops partway.

- When releasing the roof switch while the soft top roof is operating
- The vehicle speed is approximately 50 km (31 mph) or higher.
- If there is a malfunction in the system
- When operate the soft top roof repeatedly in a short period of time
- If the battery is discharged

■ **Situations in which the soft top roof may not operate properly**

In the following situation, the soft top roof may not operate properly.

- When the jam protection function or catch protection function of the power windows operates
- When starting the engine while operating the roof switch (The soft top roof that is operating stops partway or returns to the previous position.)
- If the roof switch has not been operated for a long period of time during the operation of the soft top roof. ("Soft Top Operation Not Completed Soft Top Will Move Soon" is displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 10 seconds, and then the soft top will move slowly.)
- When the roof switch is operated on a steep incline or large step
- When driving on uneven road surfaces
- In strong wind

■ **Switch operation when the operational conditions are not met**

If the soft top roof is fully closed and the vehicle is stopped, continuously operating the roof switch can operate the side windows and rear quarter windows only even if the operational conditions of the soft top roof are not met

■ **While the soft top roof is operating**

- The trunk opener switch cannot be operated. Press the switch after the operation of the soft top roof has been completed. (→P.126)
- The side windows and rear quarter windows cannot be operated using the power window switch or all window control switch. They can be operated when the soft top roof operation partway stops, however, they cannot be fully closed.

■ **If water splashes on the soft top roof, such as in the rain or in a car wash**

Wipe away any water before opening the soft top roof. To prevent wrinkles, it is recommended to open the soft top roof after it has completely dried.

■ **Soft top roof open warning buzzer**

A buzzer sounds if opening or closing the soft top roof is not completed. Open or close the soft top roof as soon as possible.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

If "Soft Top Operation Not Completed" is displayed on the multi-information display after the engine has been started, perform the following procedure.

▶ When the soft top roof of the rear window side stops near the fully closing position.

1 Operate the roof switch to open the soft top roof, and release the switch with the luggage cover opened.

2 Operate the roof switch to fully close the soft top roof.

▶ When the rear soft top roof stops near the fully opening position.

Operate the roof switch to fully close the soft top roof.

If the luggage cover does not operate by performing the procedure above, check that a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display or the operational conditions are met. If the luggage cover still does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the soft top roof cannot be operated properly when the roof switch is operated**

In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table, and then operate the switch again.

● Soft top roof operation stops partway

Situation	Warning message	Action
The engine switch is turned to OFF or ACC while the soft top roof is operating.	-	Start the engine, or turn the engine switch to ON, and then operate the roof switch.
The vehicle speed exceeds approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) while the soft top roof is operating.	"SLOW DOWN to Compelete Soft Top Operation"	Decelerate to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), and then operate the roof switch.
The trunk lid is opened using the mechanical key while the soft top roof is operating.	-	Close the trunk lid, and then operate the roof switch.
A collision is detected.	-	Contact your Lexus dealer.
The catch protection function of a power window is activated.	-	→P.149

Situation	Warning message	Action
The soft top roof is operated manually.	"SLOW DOWN to Compelete Soft Top Operation" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed"	Manually return the soft top roof to the previous position. If the soft top roof cannot be operated, repeat opening and closing operations several times.
The outside temperature is low.	-	Operate the roof switch again.
The voltage of the battery drops.	-	Start the engine, and then operate the roof switch.
A thing is put in the operating range of the soft top roof, which prevents the soft top roof from operating.	-	Remove the thing on the upper part of the windshield frame, luggage cover, storing space of the soft top roof.
The vehicle is driven in the strong head wind with the soft top roof not fully closed.	-	Partway open the soft top roof after stopping or decelerating the vehicle, and then close it.
The soft top roof is malfunctioning.	"Soft Top System Malfunction See Owner's Manual"	If the soft top roof cannot be operated even when operating the switch several times, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Soft top roof operation does not start

Situation	Warning message	Action
The engine switch is turned to OFF or ACC.	-	Start the engine or turn the engine switch to ON, and then operate the roof switch.
The vehicle is driven at the speed of approximately 50 km/h (31 mph) or higher.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Speed must be under 50km/h"	Decelerate to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), and then operate the roof switch.
The trunk lid is opened.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Close Trunk Lid"	Close the trunk lid, and then operate the roof switch.

Situation	Warning message	Action
The voltage of the battery drops.	"Soft Top System Unavailable Low Power"	Start the engine, and then operate the roof switch.
The soft top roof is operated repeatedly in a short period of time.	"Opening Function Unavailable System Overheated" "Function Temporarily Unavailable System Overheated"	Wait for a while and then operate the roof switch. Depending on the situation, "Soft Top System Available" is displayed on the multi-information display indicating that the roof switch can be operated. If the roof switch cannot be operated, operate the soft top roof manually (→P.396) or have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
The roof switch is operated while the luggage cover lock is operating.	-	Operate the roof switch again.
The jam protection function or catch protection function of a power windows is activated.	-	→P.148
The soft top roof is operated manually.	"SLOW DOWN to Compelete Soft Top Operation" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed"	Manually return the soft top roof to the previous position. If the soft top roof cannot be operated, repeat opening and closing operations several times.

● Soft top roof opens slowly

Situation	Warning message	Action
The roof switch is released for a long period of time while opening or closing the soft top roof.	"Soft Top Moving Do Not Forget To Close" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Do Not Forget To Close"	• When the engine is running or the engine switch is in ON "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Soft Top Will Move Soon" is displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 10 seconds, and then the operation is restricted and the soft top roof moves slowly. ▶ When the roof switch can be operated When the roof switch is operated while the soft top roof moves slowly, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.154) ▶ When the roof switch cannot be operated Wait for a while with the soft top roof operation stops, and then operate the roof switch. If the soft top roof does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Warning message	Action
The roof switch is released for a long period of time while opening or closing the soft top roof.	"Soft Top Moving Do Not Forget To Close" "Soft Top Operation Not Completed Do Not Forget To Close"	• When the engine switch is in ACC or OFF The operation is restricted and the soft top roof moves slowly. ▶ When starting the engine or turning the engine switch to ON The operation is stopped. After it stops, when the roof switch is operated, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.154) ▶ When the engine switch is not operated Wait for a while until the soft top roof operation is stopped. After it stops, when the roof switch is operated, the soft top roof moves corresponding the switch operation. However, if the soft top roof has been operated repeatedly in a short period of time, it may be only closed. (→P.154)

WARNING

■ When opening or closing the soft top roof

Observe the following.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the soft top roof is being operated. If a part of the body or an object is likely to be caught, or if the body is caught, stop the operation immediately.
- If anyone is in the vicinity or in the vehicle, make sure they are safe and let them know that the soft top roof is about to open or close.
- When the rear seat is occupied, be careful that the soft top roof does not hit the passenger.
- Pay extra attention to the operation of the soft top roof and the safety of the area around the vehicle while opening or closing the soft top roof.
- Take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught in moving parts.

WARNING

- Do not operate the soft top roof while the vehicle is backing up. The driver's rearward vision may be blocked, leading to an accident.
- When the soft top roof starts to move slowly, be careful not to be caught in the soft top roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

While the vehicle is driven

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury or an accident.

- Do not operate the soft top roof more than necessary.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the soft top roof half-opened.
- Do not stand on the seat, sit on the package tray (→P.51), or lean out of the vehicle.

When a child is in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow a child operate the soft top roof.
- Never let a child sit in the storing space of the soft top roof.
- Keep children away from the movable range of the soft top roof.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the soft top roof

- Make sure that there is no obstacle within a height of 65 cm (25.6 in.) from the soft top roof.
  Also, be careful when passing a place with height restriction, such as a tunnel or underground passage.
- Do not put anything in the storing space of the soft top roof.
- Do not sit on or put luggage on the soft top roof or luggage cover.
- When there is snow or luggage on the soft top roof or luggage cover, remove it before operating the roof switch.
- Do not open or close the soft top roof when anything is put on the trunk lid.
- Do not close the soft top roof when anything is put on the upper part of the windshield frame.
- Do not open or close the soft top roof when the outside temperature is -5°C (23.0°F) or lower or the side windows and rear quarter windows are frozen.
- Do not leave the soft top roof not fully opened or closed for a long period of time.
- Do not leave the soft top roof opened for a long period of time. The soft top roof may have wrinkles or deteriorate.
- When opening the trunk lid using the mechanical key, fully open or close the soft top roof.
- Do not install a roof luggage carrier to the soft top roof.
- Do not operate the soft top roof manually except in an emergency. (→P.396)

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 162

Cargo and luggage 168

Trailer towing 169

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 170

Automatic transmission 173

Turn signal lever 180

Parking brake 181

Brake Hold 184

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 186

Automatic High Beam 189

Fog light switch 191

Windshield wipers and washer 192

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 196

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 198

PCS (Pre-Collision System) 203

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) ... 211

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 219

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 227

Dynamic radar cruise control 237

Cruise control 245

Driving mode select switch .. 248

Lexus parking assist-sensor .. 249

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254

Exhaust Gas Filter system 265

Driving assist systems 265

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 271

Eco-friendly driving tips 273

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine**

→P.170

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift position to D. (→P.175)

Check that the shift position indicator shows D.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, release the parking brake. (→P.181)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 With the shift position in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift position to P. (→P.175)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.181)

3 Shift the shift position to P. (→P.176)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P.

4 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

5 Slowly release the brake pedal.

6 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 Firmly depress the brake pedal and shift the shift position to D.

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.266)

2 Set the parking brake. (→P.181)

3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

4 Release the parking brake. (→P.181)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

In order to prevent theft or effect of the weather on the environment of the vehicle cabin, close the soft top roof when parking the vehicle.

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is firmly or quickly depressed

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
  - When the shift position is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D*, or P to R* (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
  - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.

*: Depending on the situation, the shift position may not be changed.

- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P.266) to cancel Drive Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (186 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.411)

■ **Brake pads and discs (if equipped)**

The brake pads and discs are designed for use under high load conditions. Therefore, brake noise may be generated depending on the vehicle speed, braking force and vehicle environment (temperature, humidity, etc.).

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

WARNING

■ When driving the vehicle

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.

- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

● Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

● During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.362

● Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.173)

● Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.

● Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

● Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.

● Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.

● After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift position

● Do not let the vehicle roll backward while a forward driving position is selected, or roll forward while the shift position is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not shift the shift position to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Changing the shift position to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission.
  Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to change the shift position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Changing the shift position to any positions other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.
  After changing the shift position, make sure to confirm the current shift position displayed on the shift position indicator inside the meter.

Brake pad wear

If any of the following situations occur, have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- If the thickness of the brake pads exceeds the brake pad wear limit when visually checking all four brake pads (for the brake pad wear limit, refer to P.415)
- If "Brake Pad Wear Visit Your Dealer" is displayed (only the right-side pads can be detected)

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed. Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured. It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the shift position is any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

WARNING

When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift position to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift position in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- The brake system consists of 2 or more individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other(s) will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time while driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.384)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

If the shift control system is damaged by flooding, it may not be possible to shift the shift position to P, or from P to other positions. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift position to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

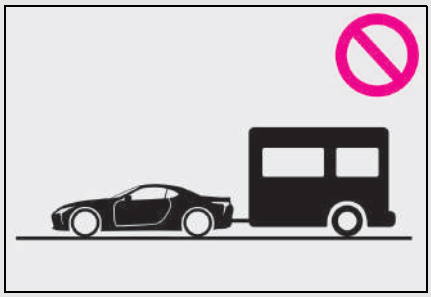
- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of Center Display
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.181)

The parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

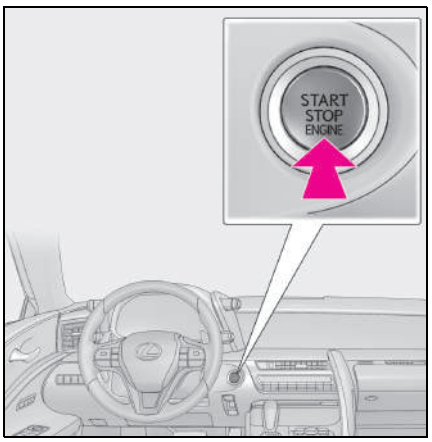
3 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



■ **Engine switch illumination**

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When a door is opened, or the engine switch mode is changed from ACC or ON to off, the engine switch illumination slowly blinks.
- When the engine switch is in ACC or ON, the engine switch illumination illuminates.

■ **If the engine does not start**

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.83) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.388 to start the engine. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.123), the engine can be started.

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.391 to restart the engine.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.116

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P.130

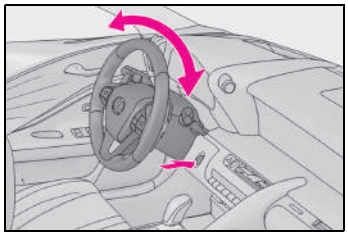
■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P.130

■ **Steering lock function**

- After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.
- When the steering lock cannot be released, “Push engine switch while turning steering wheel in either direction” will

be displayed on the multi-information display.
Press the engine switch shortly and firmly while turning the steering wheel left and right.



- To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the engine switch. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ If there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system

If "Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Electronic key battery

→P.353

■ Operation of the engine switch

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ Customization

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.387.

WARNING

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution while driving

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.181)
3. Shift the shift position to P. (→P.176)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P. (→P.175)

4 Press the engine switch.

The engine will stop, and the meter display will be extinguished (the shift position indicator will be extinguished a few seconds after the meter display).

5 Check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is not shown on the meter.

■ Automatic P position selection function

→P.176

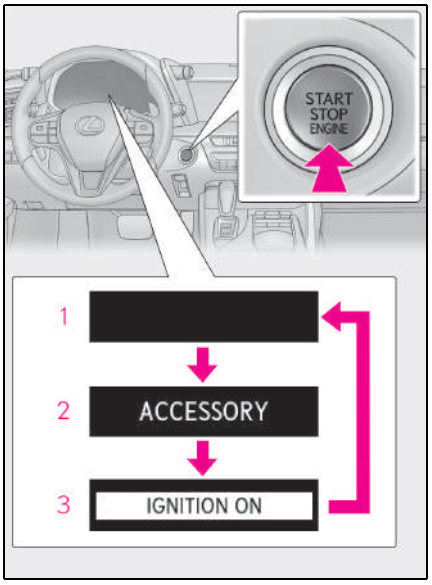
WARNING

■ Stopping the engine in an emergency

- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.362)
  However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message is shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- When restarting the engine after an emergency shutdown, press the engine switch.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACC

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meter.

3 ON

All electrical components can be used.

"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meter.

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACC for more than 20 minutes or ON (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift position in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent the battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ When the shift control system malfunctions

When attempting to turn the engine switch

off while there is a malfunction in the shift control system, the engine switch mode may change to ACC. In this case, ACC may be turned off by applying the parking brake and pressing the engine switch again. If there is a malfunction in the system, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACC or ON for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meter, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and function

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving *1
M	M mode driving *2 (→P.179)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, set the shift position in D for normal driving. You can choose gear range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

*2: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

■ For the shift positions

- When the engine switch is off or in ACC, the shift position cannot be changed.
- When the engine switch is in ON, the shift position can only be changed to N.
- When the engine is running, the shift position can be changed from P to D, N or R.
- The shift position can only be changed to M directly from D.

In addition, if an attempt is made to change the shift position by moving the shift lever or

by pressing the P position switch in any of the following situations, the buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled or the shift position will automatically change to N. When this happens, select an appropriate shift position.

● Situations where the shifting operation will be disabled:
- When an attempt is made to change the shift position from P to another position by moving the shift lever without depressing the brake pedal.
- When an attempt is made to change the shift position from P or N to M by moving the shift lever.
- When the P position switch is pressed while the vehicle is running.*1

● Situations where the shift position will automatically change to N:
- When an attempt is made to select the R position by moving the shift lever when the vehicle is moving forward.*2
- When an attempt is made to select the D position by moving the shift lever when the vehicle is moving in reverse.*3
- When the shift position is changed from R to M

● If N is selected while driving at a certain speed, even if the shift lever is not held in the N position, the shift position changes to N. In this situation, the buzzer sounds and a confirmation message is displayed on the multi-information display to inform the driver that the shift position has changed to N.

*1: Shift position may be changed to P when driving at extremely low speeds.

*2: Shift position may be changed to R when driving at low speeds.

*3: Shift position may be changed to D when driving at low speeds.

■ **Reverse warning buzzer**

When shifting into R, a buzzer will sound to inform the driver that the shift position is in R.

■ **To protect the automatic transmission**

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When driving with cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated**

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not be activated because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

● While driving in the D position, downshifting to 9, 8, 7, 6, 5 or 4.

● When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P.248)

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

→P.163

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift position is in D. (Shifting the shift position to M cancels the function.)

■ **If a message about a shift operation is shown**

To prevent the shift position from being selected incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, the shift position may be changed automatically or operating the shift lever may be required. In this case, change the shift position following the messages on the multi-information display.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

→P.333

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. reverse warning buzzer) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Do not accelerate or shift the shift position suddenly.

Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

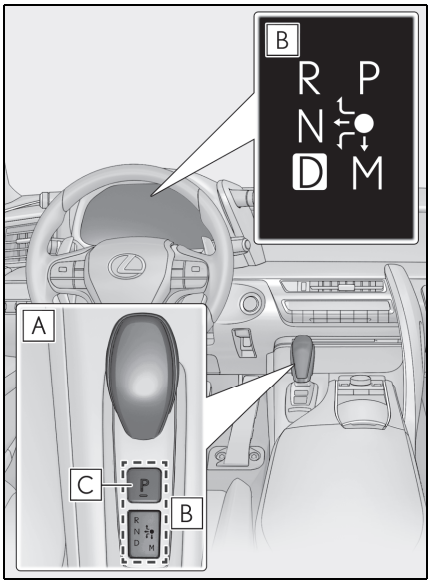
NOTICE

■ **Situations where shift control system malfunctions are possible**

If any of the following situations occur, shift control system malfunctions are possible. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place on level ground, apply the parking brake, and then contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

- When the warning message indicating the shift control system appears on the multi-information display.
- The display indicates that no shift position is selected for more than a few seconds.

Shifting the shift lever



A Shift lever

Operate the shift lever gently and securely in the direction of the arrow on the shift position indicator.

To shift to N, slide the shift lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it.

Release the shift lever after each shifting operation to allow it to return to its regular position (●).

Shifting to M is only possible when the shift position is in D.

When shifting from P to N, D or R, from N, D, M or R to P, from D or M to R, or from R to D, ensure that the brake pedal is being depressed and the vehicle is stationary.

B Shift position indicator

Meter display:

The current shift position is highlighted.

When any shift position other than D or M is selected, the arrow toward M and M

position indicator are displayed in gray.

Shift lever display:

The current shift position is illuminated.

When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.

C P position switch

WARNING

For the shift lever

- Do not remove the shift lever knob or use anything but a genuine Lexus shift lever knob. Also, do not hang anything on the shift lever.
  Doing so could prevent the shift lever from returning to position, causing unexpected accidents to occur when the vehicle is in motion.
- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the shift lever when not using them.

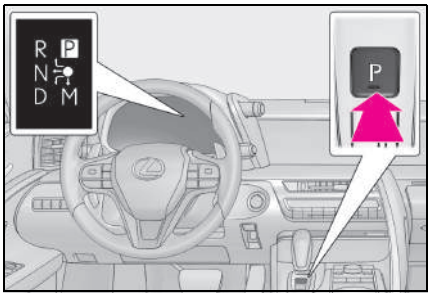
P position switch

When shifting the shift position to P

Fully stop the vehicle and set the parking brake, and then press the P position switch.

When the shift position is changed to P, the switch illuminates.

Check that the shift position indicator shows P.



Shifting the shift position from P to other positions

- While depressing the brake pedal firmly, operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled.
- When selecting the shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument cluster.
- The shift position cannot be changed from P to M directly.

Automatic P position selection function

In the following situations, the shift position is automatically changed to P.

- When pressing the engine switch with the vehicle stopped while the engine switch is in ON and the shift position is in a position other than P (after the shift position has changed to P, the engine switch will turn off)*
- When the driver's door is opened and all of the following conditions are met, while the shift position is in a position other than P
  - The engine switch is in ON.
  - The driver is no wearing the seat belt.

• The brake pedal is not depressed.

To start off the vehicle after the shift position is changed to P, operate the shift lever again.

- When the vehicle is stopped after the engine has been stopped in an emergency while driving
- When voltage of the battery drops while the shift position is in a position other than P

*: When the engine switch is pressed while driving at extremely slow speeds, such as immediately before stopping the vehicle, the shift position may automatically change to P. Make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped before pressing the engine switch.

When the engine switch is changed to ACC with the shift position held in N

- Performing the following operations allows the engine switch to be set to ACC with the shift position held in N.

1. Operate the shift lever and change the shift position to N when the engine is running.
2. Return the shift lever to its regular position (●).
3. Operate the shift lever to N and hold it there until the buzzer sounds.
4. Press the engine switch within 5 seconds after the buzzer sounds.

The engine switch will be set to ACC with the shift position in N.*
Make sure to check that the buzzer sounds and "Holding N Push P Switch When Done" is displayed on the multi-information display.

- To change a shift position to a position other than N, press the P position switch.

*: To keep this state, do not operate the engine switch. If the engine switch is operated repeatedly, the engine switch will turn off after the shift position has automatically changed to P.

If the shift position cannot be shifted from P

There is a possibility that the battery is discharged. Check the battery in this situation. (→P.389)

WARNING

P position switch

- Do not press the P position switch while the vehicle is moving.
  If the P position switch is pressed when driving at very low speeds (for example, directly before stopping the vehicle), the vehicle may stop suddenly when the shift position switches to P, which could lead to an accident.
- In order to prevent the shift position from accidentally being changed, do not touch the P position switch when not using them.

NOTICE

Notes regarding shift lever and P position switch operation

Avoid repeatedly operating the shift lever and P position switch in quick succession.

The system protection function may activate and it will not be temporarily possible to shift the shift position other than P. If this happens, please wait for a while before attempting to change the shift position again.

When exiting the vehicle (driver's seat only)

Check that the shift position indicator shows P and that the parking brake indicator is illuminated before opening the door and exiting the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ When changing the engine switch to ACC with the shift position held in N

Even if the engine is not running, by operating the shift lever and the engine switch, the engine switch may be changed to ACC with the shift position held in N. Make sure that the engine is running before performing the operation.

Selecting the driving mode

■ Driving mode

→P.248

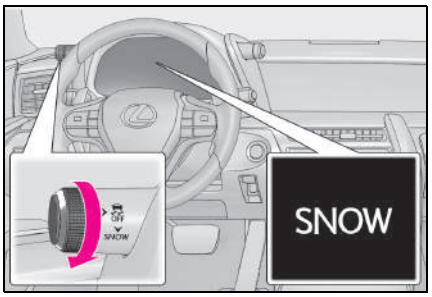
■ Snow mode (if equipped)

Snow mode can be selected to suit the conditions when driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Turn the switch backward.

The snow mode indicator comes on.

Turn the switch backward again to return to normal mode.



■ Snow mode automatic deactivation (if equipped)

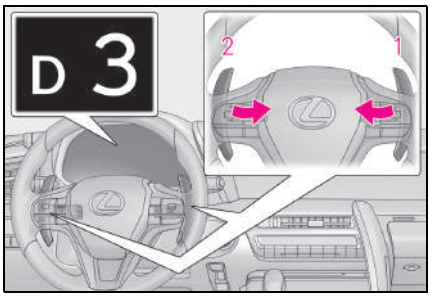
Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the engine switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch.

When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions. When the "+" paddle shift switch is operated, the shift range switches to a range that is one range higher than the current range.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Meter display	Function
D2 - D10	A gear in the range between D1 and the selected shift range is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the shift range at D1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

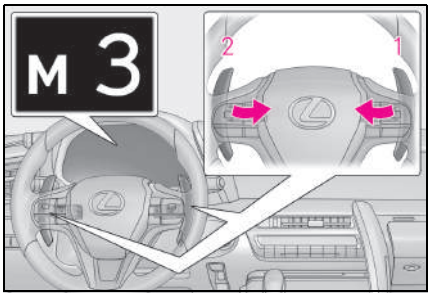
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is moved to D again
- When pressing and holding the "+" paddle shift switch

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting gears in the M position

To enter M mode, shift the shift position to M. Gears can be selected by operating the paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from M1 to M10, will be fixed and displayed in the meter.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When it is necessary to protect the engine or automatic transmission when the engine coolant temperature is low, the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high or low, or other reasons.
- When particulate matter has accumulated in the exhaust filter.

Also, the gear will not shift when the vehicle speed is low, even if an upshift operation is performed.

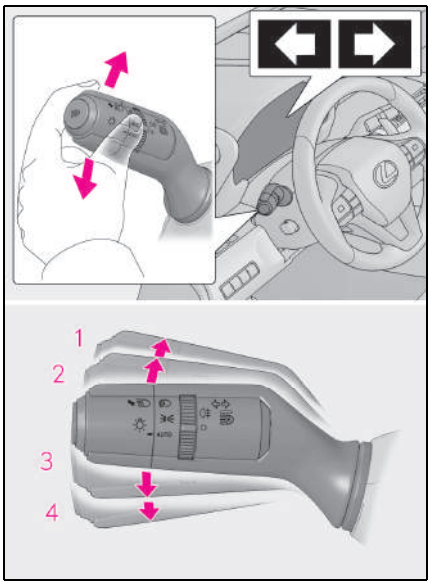
■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving perfor-

mance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions



1 Right turn

2 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Left turn

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ Customization
→P.420

Parking brake

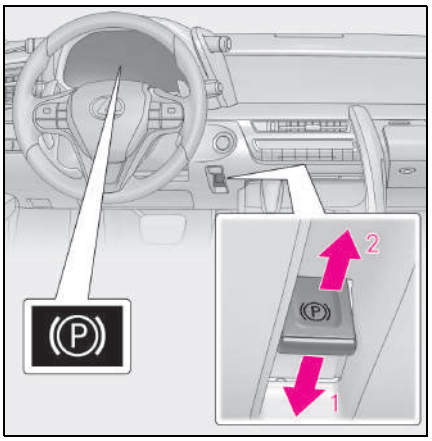
The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually.

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ Using the manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



1 Push the switch to set the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

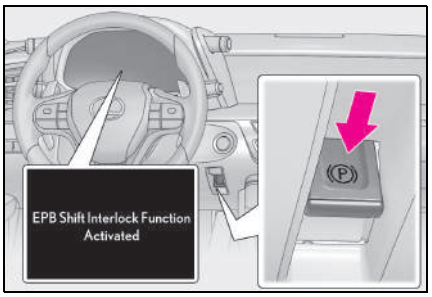
2 Pull the switch to release the parking brake

- Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
- Using the parking brake automatic release function, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal. When using this function, slowly depress the accelerator pedal.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light turn off.

■ Turning the automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display



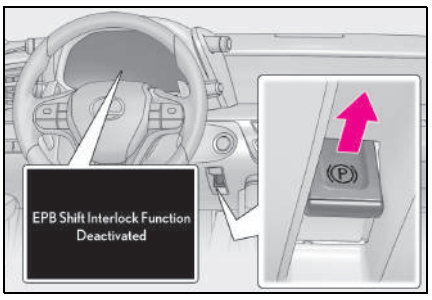
When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

- When the shift position is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light will turn off.
- When the shift position is shifted to P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Operate the shift lever and P position switch with the vehicle stopped and the brake pedal depressed.

■ Turning the automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display



■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in ON, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in ON, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ Parking brake automatic release function

- When the shift position is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released in automatic mode.
- When all of the following conditions are met in manual mode, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal.
  - The driver's door is closed
  - The driver is wearing the seat belt
  - The shift position is in D, M or R

■ If "EPB frequently operated Wait a minute" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ **If "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "EPB unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Parking brake operation sound**

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake indicator light**

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will turn on and stay on as described below:
  ON: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in ON: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When the parking brake switch malfunctions**

Automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) will be turned on automatically.

■ **Parking the vehicle**

→P.162

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "EPB applied" is displayed on the multi-information display (with the vehicle reaching a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P.371

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.271

WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift position to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

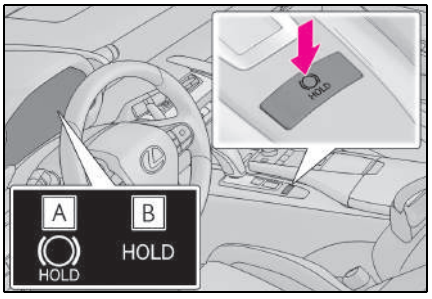
Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift position is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift position in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator A (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator B (yellow) comes on.



■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- "EPB Activation Stopped Incompletely" or "EPB Malfunction Visit your dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake.

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.181)

■ When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the

system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" or "Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning message and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P.375

WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift position to P and set the parking brake.

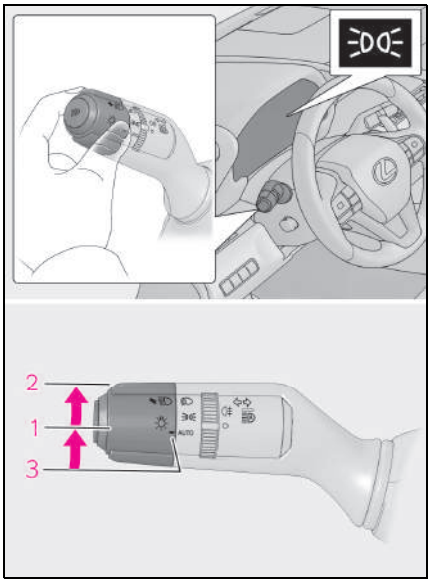
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning on the headlights

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:

▶ Type A

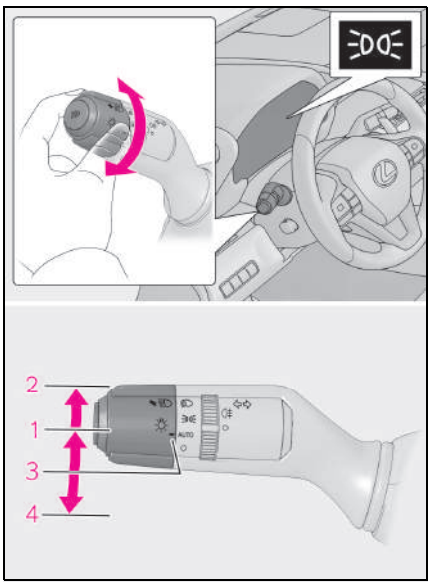


1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.186) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

▶ Type B



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.186) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

4 The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.186)

■ AUTO mode can be used when

The engine switch is in ON.

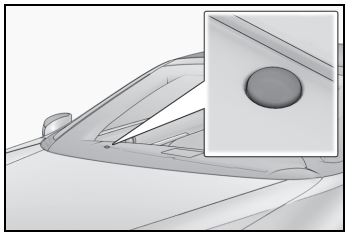
■ Daytime running light function

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch

off (type B only) or in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

▶ Type A

- When the light switch is in : The headlights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACC or turned off.
- When the light switch is in AUTO: The headlights and all the lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACC or turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch to AUTO position once and then back to or .

▶ Type B

If you open the driver's door with the engine switch off, all the lights are turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

■ **Light reminder buzzer (if equipped)**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACC and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery saving function**

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the light switch is in the or AUTO position when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

When the engine switch is turned to ON, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ **Welcome light illumination control**

The front position, tail lights and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the AUTO position.

■ **Customization**

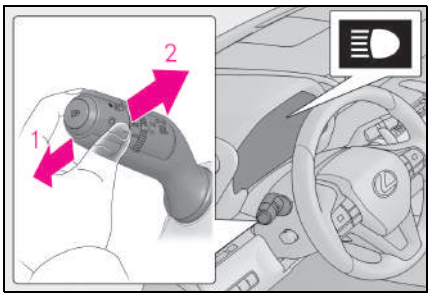
Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

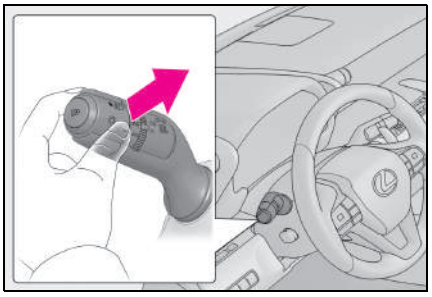
You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system (if equipped)

This system allows the headlights and front position lights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch in AUTO after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights

When any of the following conditions is met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift position is in R (both left and right side cornering lights)

■ Cornering light control

- The lights illuminate when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or less. However, the lights turn off when the vehicle speed increases to approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

Automatic High Beam*

*: If equipped

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle front camera to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of a vehicle ahead, etc., and automatically turns the high beam on or off as necessary.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

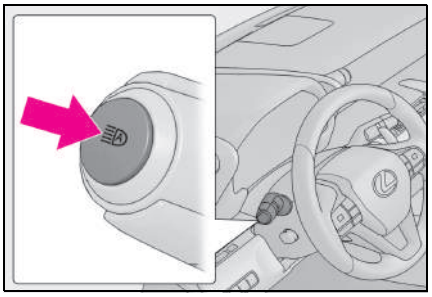
Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beam on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system

Do not overload the vehicle.

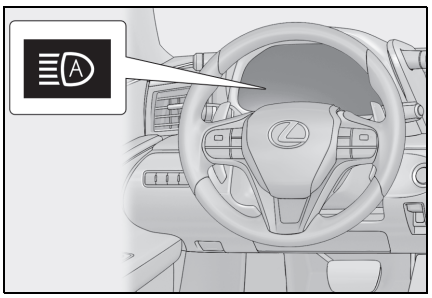
Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO or position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the system is operating.



■ High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

● When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

● If any of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned off:
- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

■ Front camera detection information

● The high beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
- When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
- When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
- When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
- When vehicles ahead have no lights

● The high beam may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights with-

out using the headlights is detected.

- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to switch to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
  - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
  - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
  - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The high beam may be turned on or off when the driver does not expect it.
- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the situations shown below, the system may not be able to accurately detect surrounding brightness levels. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to cause problems for pedestrians, vehicles ahead or other parties. In these cases, manually switch between the high and low beams.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - The front camera is deformed or dirty.
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, changing color, or have improperly adjusted aim.
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
  - When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.).
  - When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
  - There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
  - The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
  - The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
  - The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.
  - The vehicle is used in a territory in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle is approved, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic territory, or vice versa.

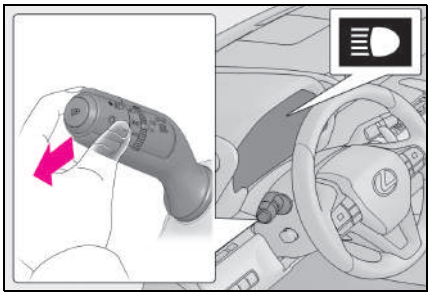
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to high beam

Push the lever away from you.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

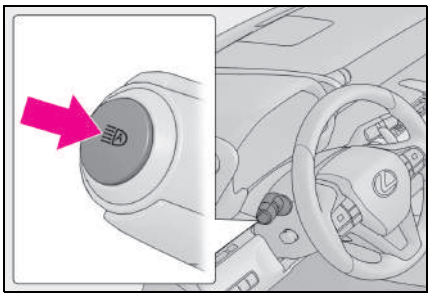


■ Switching to low beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

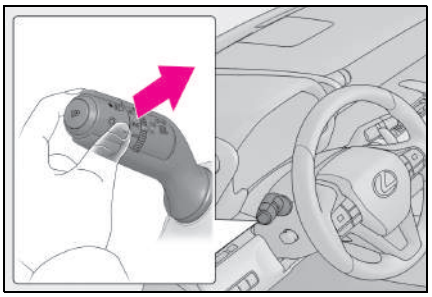
Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



Temporarily switching to the low beams

Pull the lever toward you and then return it to its original position.

The high beams remain on while the lever is pulled toward you, however, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams remain on for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the Automatic High Beam will be activated again.



Temporarily switching to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when the high beam may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Fog light switch*

*: If equipped

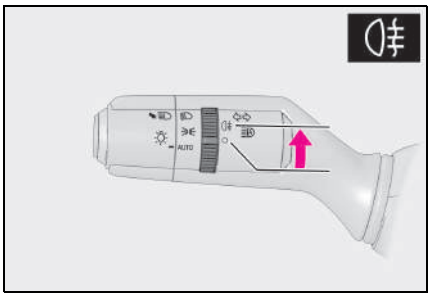
When in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog, turn on the rear fog light to notify following vehicles the existence of your vehicle.

Turning on the rear fog light

Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to O .

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



Rear fog light can be used when

The headlights are turned on.

Each time the headlights are turned off, the rear fog light is turned off.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

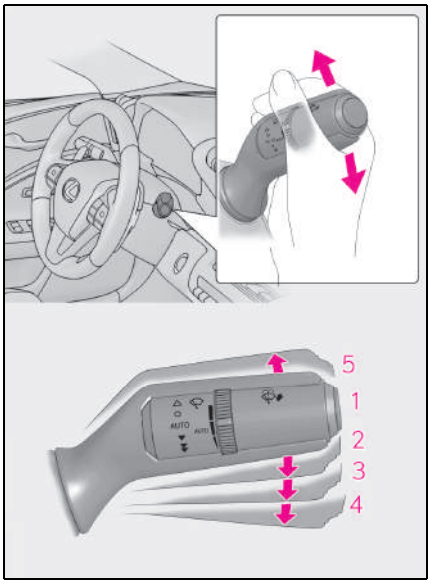
NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows. When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 ○ Off

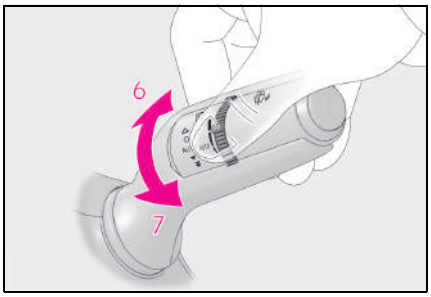
2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation

3 ▼ Low speed operation

4 ▼▼ High speed operation

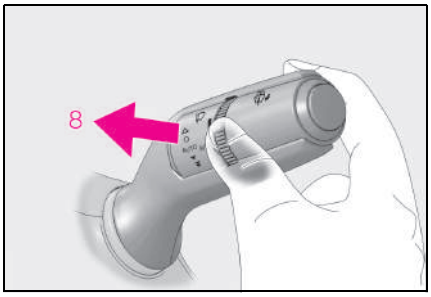
5 △ Temporary operation

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. (After operating several times, the wipers operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, the dripping prevention does not operate while the vehicle is moving.)

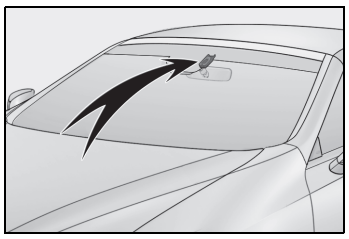
When the engine switch is in ON and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in ON.

Raindrop sensor

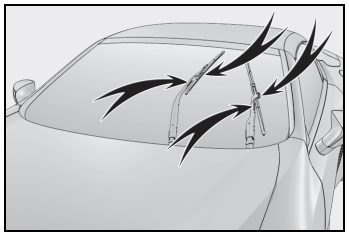
- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.
  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper is turned to AUTO position while the engine switch is in ON, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (-22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



Door opening linked windshield wiper stop function

When AUTO is selected and the windshield wipers are operating, if a door is opened, the operation of the windshield wipers will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wipers, provided the vehicle is stopped. When the door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

To protect the windshield wipers

If movement of the windshield wipers is largely restricted by a foreign object such as snow, the operation of the windshield wipers may be stopped automatically to protect the windshield wipers. In this case, turn the windshield wiper switch off and remove the foreign object, and then use the

windshield wipers.

■ When stopping the engine in an emergency while driving

If the windshield wipers are operating when the engine is stopped, the windshield wipers will operate in high speed operation. After the vehicle is stopped, operation will return to normal when the engine switch is turned to ON, or operation will stop when the driver's door is opened.

■ Customization

The rain-sensing operation setting can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.420)

WARNING

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

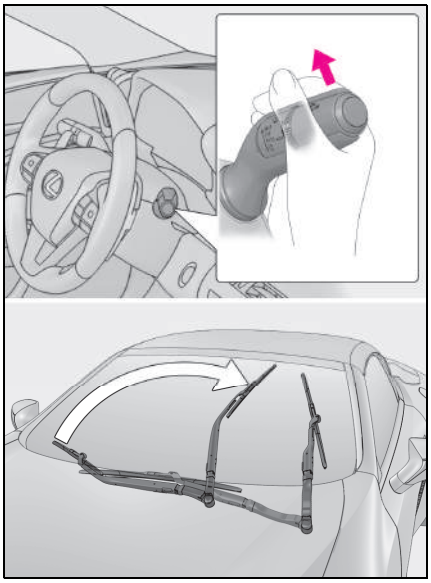
Changing the windshield wiper rest position/Lifting the windshield wipers

When the windshield wipers are not being used, they retract to below the hood. To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when parking in cold conditions or when replacing a windshield wiper insert, change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever.

■ Raising the wipers to the service position

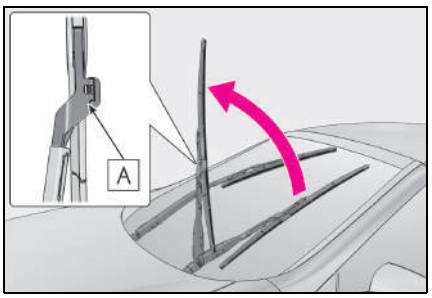
Within approximately 45 seconds of turning the engine switch off, move the wiper lever to the △ position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds or more.

The wipers will move to the service position.



Lifting the windshield wipers

While holding the hook portion A of the wiper arm, lift the windshield wiper from the windshield.



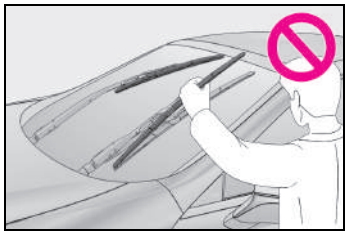
Lowering the windshield wipers to the retracted position

With the windshield wipers placed on the windshield, turn the engine switch to ON and then move the wiper lever to an operating position. When the wiper switch is turned off, the windshield wipers will stop at the retracted position. Even if the wipers deviate while the engine switch is OFF, the wipers will return to the normal position.

NOTICE

When lifting the windshield wipers

- Do not lift the windshield wipers when they are in the retracted position below the hood. Otherwise, they may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to a windshield wiper and/or the hood.
- Do not lift a windshield wiper by the wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper blade may be deformed.



- Do not operate the wiper lever when the windshield wipers are lifted. Otherwise, the windshield wipers may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to the windshield wipers and/or hood.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the engine switch off.
- When closing the soft top roof, ensure that both side doors, side windows and rear quarter windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P.419

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

WARNING

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

Refueling

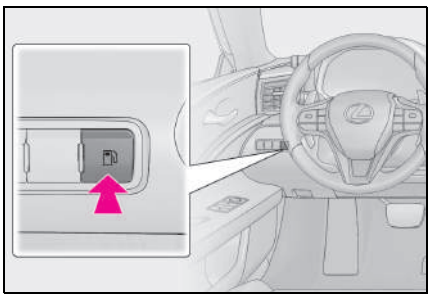
Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Opening the fuel tank cap

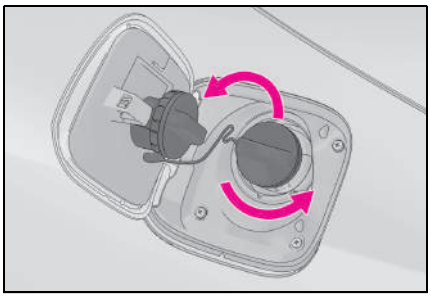
1 Press the opener.

When the doors has been locked using the entry function or wireless remote control,

the fuel filler door cannot be opened.



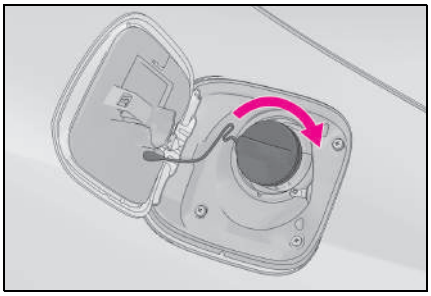
2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.



■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened
→P.387

Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System +*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System)
→P.203

■ LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*
→P.211

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*
→P.219

■ Automatic High Beam
→P.189

■ Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*
→P.227

■ Dynamic radar cruise control*
→P.237

*: If equipped

WARNING

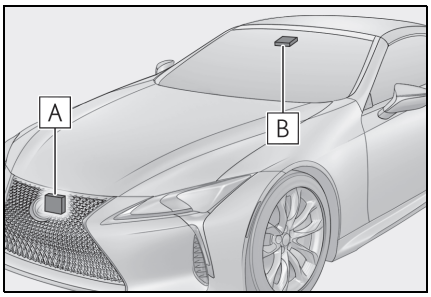
■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



A Radar sensor

B Front camera

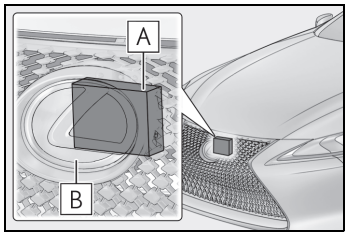
WARNING

■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

● Keep the radar sensor and the radar sensor cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the radar sensor cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and radar sensor cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

● Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, radar sensor cover or surrounding area.

● Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● Do not disassemble the radar sensor.

● Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or radar sensor cover.

● In the following cases, the radar sensor must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

- When the radar sensor or front grille are removed and installed, or replaced
- When the front bumper is replaced

■ To avoid malfunction of the front camera

Observe the following precautions.

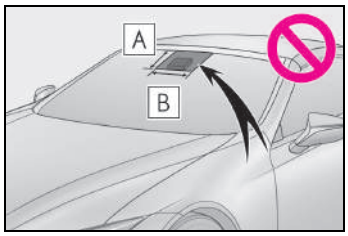
Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

● Keep the windshield clean at all times.

- If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
- If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
- If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



A From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera

B Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)

- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation, or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation, or ice. (→P.283)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
  After replacing the windshield, the front camera must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens.
  If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ Certification

▶ For vehicles sold in Korea



상호명/제조자 : DENSO CORPORATION
기자재의 명칭 (모델명) : 차량 충돌방지용 레이더 무선기기(DNMWR008)
제조연월/제조국 : See Product. / JAPAN
식별부호 : MSIP-CRM-DKR-DNMWR008

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

For Vehicles sold in Jordan
TRC approval number: TRC/LPD/2014/149

■ If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

● In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a sensor is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	To clean the part of the windshield in front of the front camera, use the windshield wipers or the windshield defogger of the air conditioning system (→P.283).
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.

● In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

*: If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect vehicles and pedestrians*1 in front of your vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.205)

*1: Depending on the region in which the vehicle was sold, the pedestrian detection function may not be available. See the following table for details.

Detectable objects

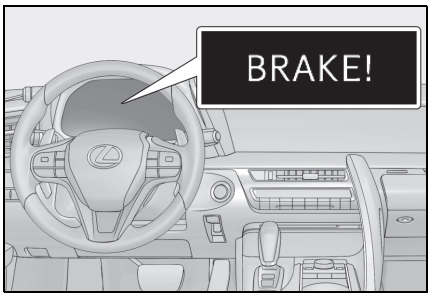
Countries/areas	Function availability	Regions
Oman, Qatar, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates	The pedestrian detection function is available	Region A
Singapore, Taiwan, Brunei, Malaysia, Jordan, Lebanon, South Africa, Korea	The pedestrian detection function is not available	Region B

The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of June 2020. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the countries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

System functions

■ Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



Pre-collision brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision braking

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system warns the driver. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the collision speed.

Suspension control

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.266) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

WARNING

Limitations of the pre-collision system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.207
  - Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.209
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

Pre-collision braking

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2seconds.Depress the brake pedal as necessary.
- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.

WARNING

- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

■ When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

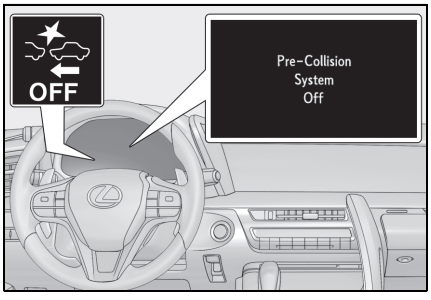
Changing settings of the pre-collision system

■ Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on  (→P.100) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

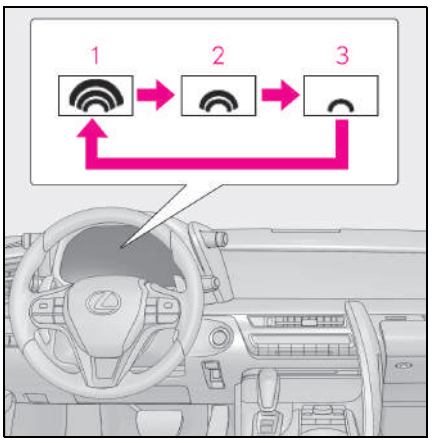
If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on (→P.100) of the multi-information display.

The operation timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off.



1 Far

The warning will begin to operate earlier than with the default timing.

2 Middle

This is the default setting.

3 Near

The warning will begin to operate later than with the default timing.

Operational conditions

Availability of the pedestrian detection function depends on the region in which the vehicle was sold. (For specific countries/areas: →P.203)

Read the following for details:

▶ Region A
(The pedestrian detection function is available)

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle or pedestrian is high.

Each function is operational at the following speeds:

● Pre-collision warning:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 180 km/h (7 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision brake assist:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 180 km/h (20 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 80 km/h [20 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision braking:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 180 km/h (7 and 110 mph). (For detecting a pedestrian, vehicle speed is between approximately 10 and 80 km/h [7 and 50 mph].)
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time

● If the shift position is in R

● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

▶ Region B
(The pedestrian detection function is not available)

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high.

Each function is operational at the following

speeds:

● Pre-collision warning:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 15 and 180 km/h (10 and 110 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision brake assist:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 30 and 180 km/h (20 and 110 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more.

● Pre-collision braking:
- Vehicle speed is between approximately 15 and 180 km/h (10 and 110 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is approximately 10 km/h (7 mph) or more.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

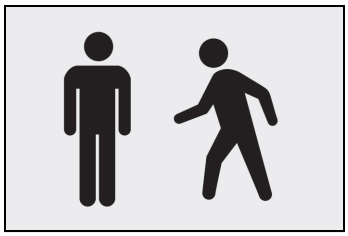
● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time

● If the shift position is in R

● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

■ Pedestrian detection function *2

The pre-collision system detects pedestrians based on the size, profile, and motion of a detected object. However, a pedestrian may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.209)



*2: For countries/areas specified as Region B (→P.203), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

■ Cancelation of the pre-collision braking

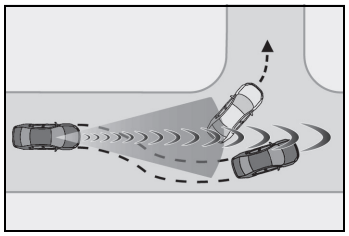
If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

● The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.

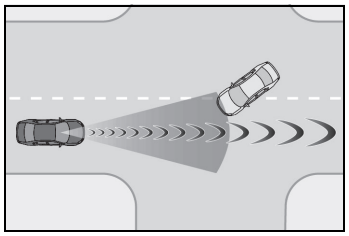
● The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

■ Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

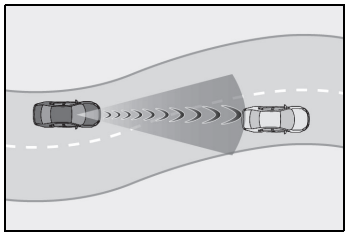
● In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.
- When passing a vehicle or pedestrian *2
- When changing lanes while overtaking a preceding vehicle
- When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is changing lanes
- When overtaking a preceding vehicle that is making a left/right turn



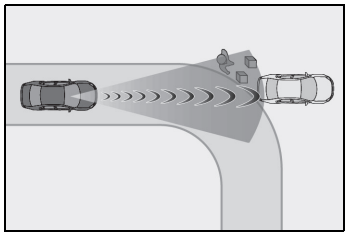
- When passing a vehicle in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn



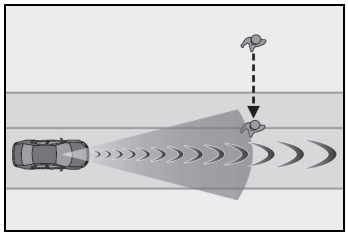
- When driving on a road where relative location to vehicle ahead in an adjacent lane may change, such as on a winding road



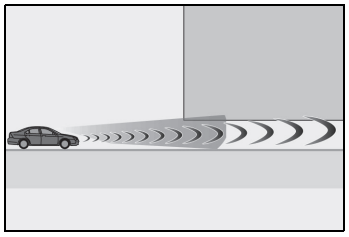
- When rapidly closing on a vehicle ahead
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when the road surface is uneven or undulating
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a vehicle, pedestrian *2, or object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



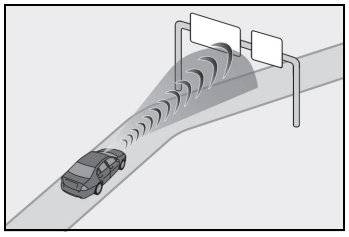
- When driving on a narrow path surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion on the road surface or roadside
- When a crossing pedestrian approaches very close to the vehicle *2



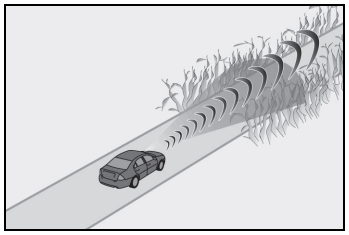
- When passing through a place with a low structure above the road (low ceiling, traffic sign, etc.)



- When passing under an object (billboard, etc.) at the top of an uphill road



- When rapidly closing on an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact the vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When there are patterns or paint on the road or a wall that may be mistaken for a vehicle or pedestrian *2
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present

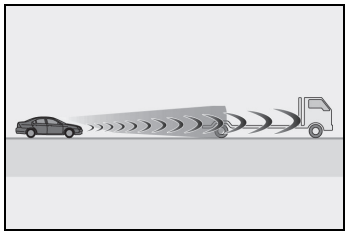
*2: For countries/areas specified as Region

B (→P.203), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

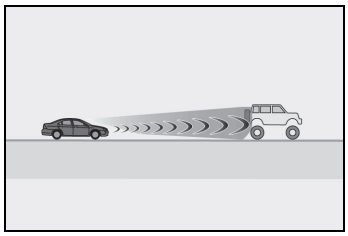
■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

● In some situations such as the following, a vehicle may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:

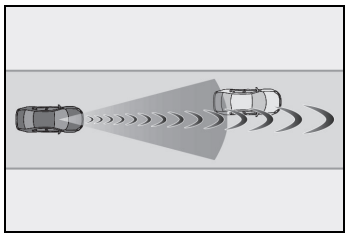
- If an oncoming vehicle is approaching your vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle or bicycle
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer



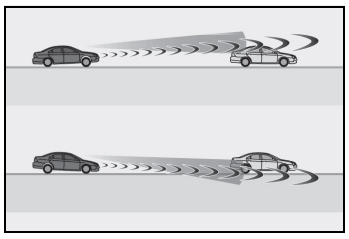
- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance



- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle or emerges from beside a vehicle
- If a vehicle ahead makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When suddenly cutting behind a preceding vehicle
- When a vehicle ahead is not directly in front of your vehicle



- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a vehicle ahead
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is wobbling.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:

- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface

● Some pedestrians such as the following may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly *2:

- Pedestrians shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
- Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
- Pedestrians who are carrying large baggage, holding an umbrella, etc., hiding part of their body
- Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
- Pedestrians who are pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- Groups of pedestrians which are close together
- Pedestrians who are wearing white and look extremely bright
- Pedestrians in the dark, such as at night or while in a tunnel
- Pedestrians whose clothing appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as their surroundings
- Pedestrians near walls, fences, guardrails, or large objects
- Pedestrians who are on a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.) on the road
- Pedestrians who are walking fast
- Pedestrians who are changing speed abruptly
- Pedestrians running out from behind a vehicle or a large object
- Pedestrians who are extremely close to the side of the vehicle (outside rear view mirror, etc.)

*2: For countries/areas specified as Region B (→P.203), the pedestrian detection function may not be available.

■ **If VSC is disabled**

● If VSC is disabled (→P.267), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.

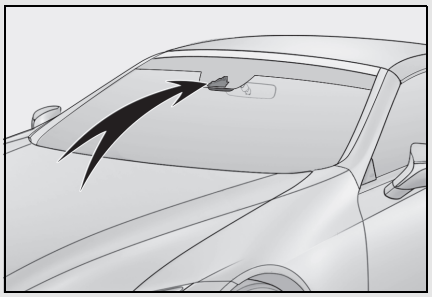
● The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

*: If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white or yellow lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane. Furthermore, the system also provides steering assistance when dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LKA system recognizes visible white or yellow lines with the front camera on the upper portion of the front windshield.

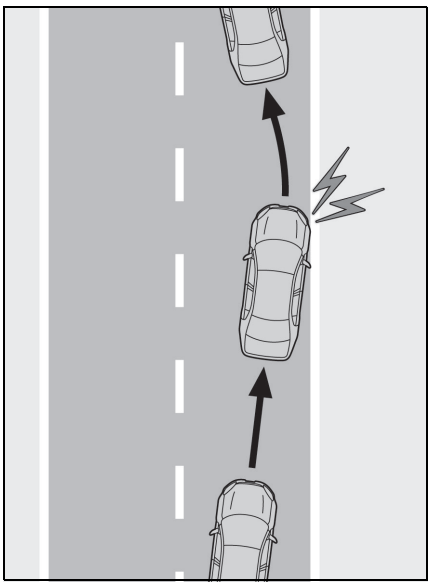


Functions included in LKA system

■ Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either the warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver.

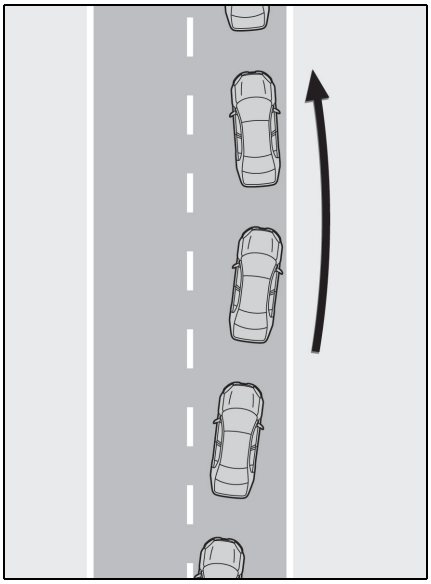
When the warning buzzer sounds, check the surrounding road situation and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.



■ Steering assist function

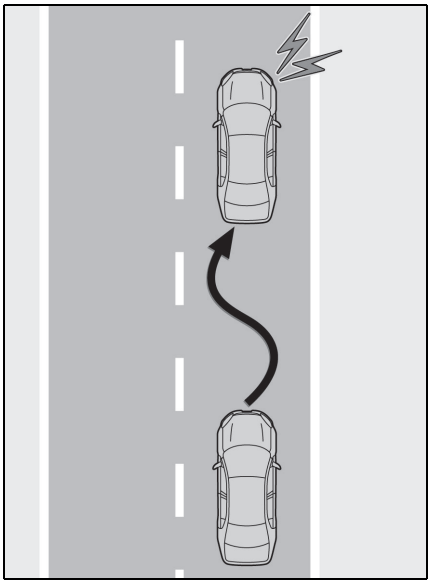
When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.



■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying or appears as if it may depart from its lane multiple times, the warning buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.

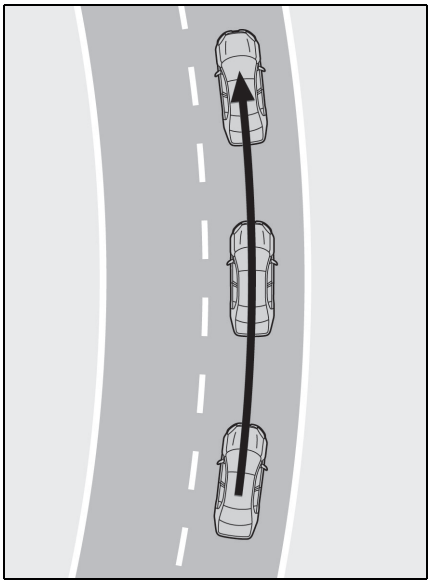


■ Lane centering function

This function is linked with radar cruise control and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

When radar cruise control is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.



WARNING

■ Before using LKA system

Do not rely solely upon the LKA system. The LKA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time. Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ To avoid operating LKA system by mistake

When not using the LKA system, use the LKA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LKA system

Do not use the LKA system in the following situations.
The system may not operate properly and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, curbs, reflective poles, etc.).
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Asphalt repair marks, white (yellow) line marks, etc. are present due to road repair.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than on highways and freeways.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.

■ Preventing LKA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.

WARNING

- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

Turning LKA system on

Press the LKA switch to turn the LKA system on.

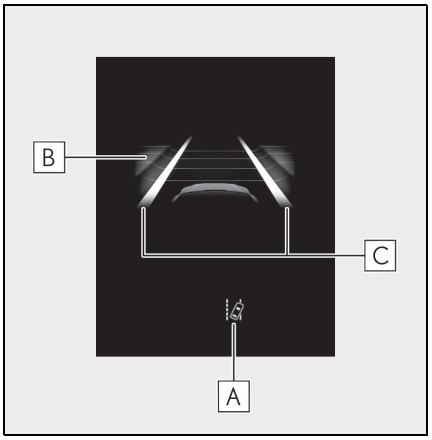
The LKA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LKA switch again to turn the LKA system off.

When the LKA system is turned on or off, operation of the LKA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LKA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LKA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

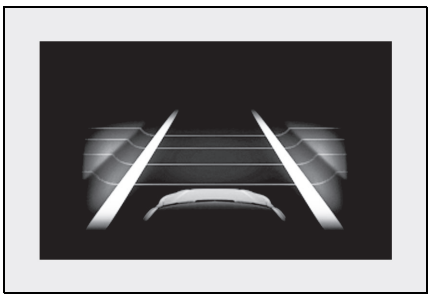
B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

C Lane departure alert function display

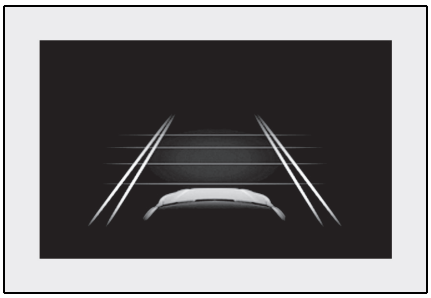
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or is temporarily canceled.

■ **Operation conditions of each function**

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LKA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.217)

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.100)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a certain amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.216)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.100)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.217)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LKA is turned on.
- Setting for "Steering Assist" and "Lane Center" in of the multi-information display are set to "On". (→P.100)
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-

speed range is operating.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 2.5 to 4.1 m (8.2 to 13.5 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 200 m (656 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.217)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a certain amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.216)
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ Temporary cancellation of functions

When the operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.215)

For Korea: If the operation conditions are no longer met while the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating, the buzzer may sound and indicate that the function has temporarily stopped operating.

■ Steering assist function/lane centering function

Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.

■ Lane departure alert function

The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc.

■ Hands off steering wheel warning

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver.

The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



● When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the system is operating

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

● When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to

rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **White (yellow) lines are only on one side of road**

The LKA system will not operate for the side on which white (yellow) lines could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which functions may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the front camera may not detect white (yellow) lines and various functions may not operate normally.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The vehicle is driven around a sharp curve.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- The headlight lenses are dirty and emit a faint amount of light at night, or the beam axis has deviated.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.

■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LKA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Lane Keeping Assist Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"	**The system may not be operating properly.** **→ Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.**
"Front Camera Vision Blocked Clean and Demist Windshield"	**Dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc. are present on the windshield in front of the front camera.** **→ Turn the LKA system off, remove any dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc. from the windshield, and then turn the LKA system back on.**

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Front Camera Unavailable"	**The operation conditions of the front camera (temperature, etc.) are not met.** **→ When the operation conditions of the front camera (temperature, etc.) are met, the LKA system will become available. Turn the LKA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LKA system back on.**
"Lane Keeping Assist Unavailable"	**The LKA system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera.** **→ Turn the LKA system off and follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedures for the warning message. Afterward, drive the vehicle for a short time, and then turn the LKA system back on.**

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Lane Keeping Assist Unavailable Below Approx 50km/h"	**The LKA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph).** **→ Drive the vehicle at approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.**
"Lane Keeping Assist Unavailable at Current Speed"	**The LKA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is too high.** **→ Slow down.**

If a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

■ **Customization**

The following settings can be changed.

Function	Setting details
Lane departure alert function	Adjust alert sensitivity
Steering assist function	Turn steering wheel assistance on and off
Vehicle sway warning function	Turn function on and off
	Adjust alert sensitivity
Lane centering function	Turn function on and off

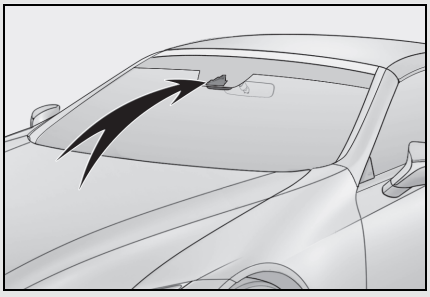
For how to change settings, refer to P.420.

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

*: If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LDA system recognizes visible white (yellow) lines with the front camera on the upper portion of the front windshield.

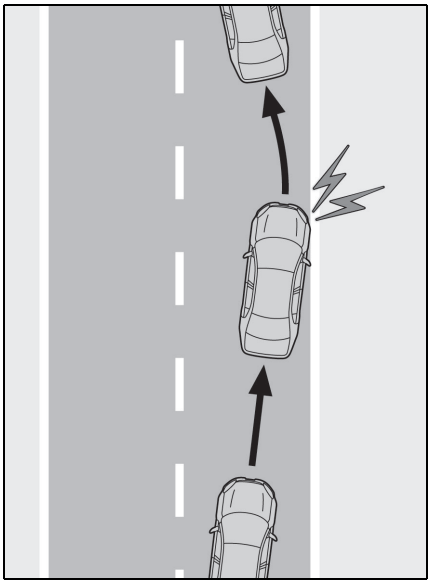


Functions included in LDA system

■ **Lane departure alert function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver.

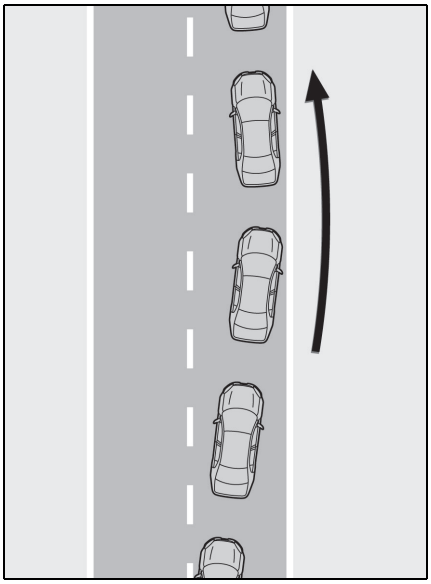
When the warning buzzer sounds, check the surrounding road situation and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.



■ Steering control function

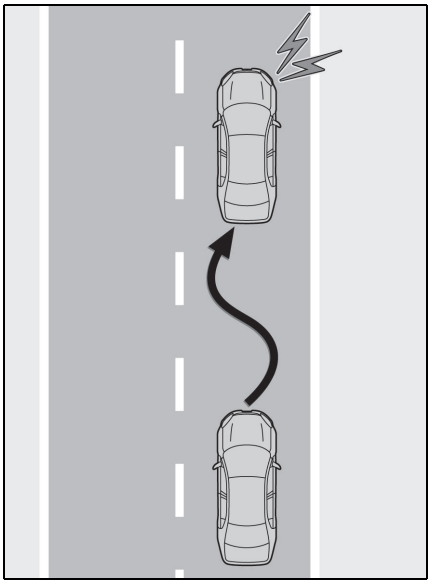
When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.



■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying or appears as if it may depart from its lane multiple times, the warning buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



WARNING

■ Before using LDA system

Do not rely solely upon the LDA system. The LDA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time. Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ To avoid operating LDA system by mistake

When not using the LDA system, use the LDA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

Do not use the LDA system in the following situations.
The system may not operate properly and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, curbs, reflective poles, etc.).
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Asphalt repair marks, white (yellow) line marks, etc. are present due to road repair.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than on highways and freeways.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.

■ Preventing LDA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc., on the surface of the lights.

WARNING

- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

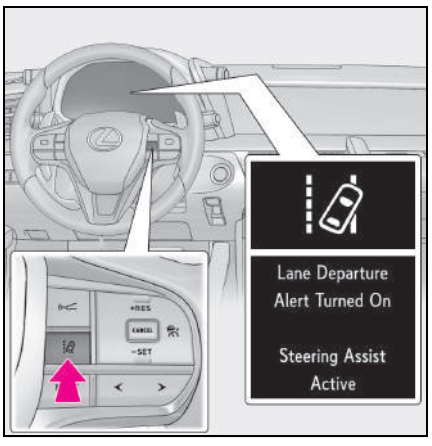
Turning LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to turn the LDA system on.

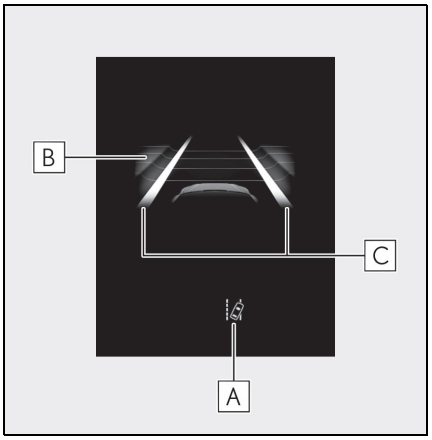
The LDA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LDA switch again to turn the LDA system off.

When the LDA system is turned on or off, operation of the LDA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LDA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LDA system is operating.
Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.
Flashing in orange:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

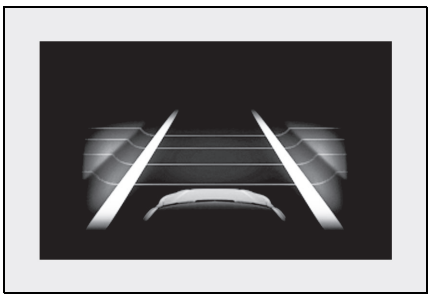
B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering control function is operating.

C Lane departure alert function display

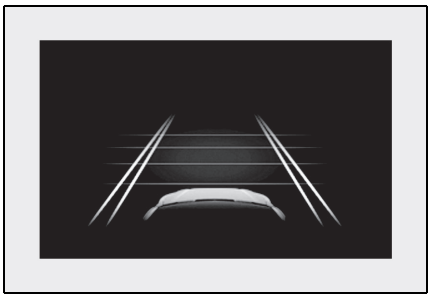
Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed white lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or is temporarily canceled.

■ **Operation conditions of each function**

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LDA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lines.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is driven on a straight road or around a gentle curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.).
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.225)

● Steering control function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.100)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a certain amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.224)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.100)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.225)

■ **Temporary cancellation of functions**

When the operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.223)

■ **Steering control function**

Depending on the vehicle speed, lane

departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc.

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning**

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver.

The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the system is operating

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **White (yellow) lines are only on one side of road**

The LDA system will not operate for the side on which white (yellow) lines could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which functions may not operate properly**

In the following situations, the front camera may not detect white (yellow) lines and various functions may not operate normally.

- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, “Raised pavement marker” or stones are present.

- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The vehicle is driven around a sharp curve.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- The headlight lenses are dirty and emit a faint amount of light at night, or the beam axis has deviated.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.

■ Warning message

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LDA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"	**The system may not be operating properly.** **→ Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.**
"Front Camera Vision Blocked Clean and Demist Windshield"	**Dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc. are present on the windshield in front of the front camera.** **→ Turn the LDA system off, remove any dirt, rain, condensation, ice, snow, etc., from the windshield, and then turn the LDA system back on.**

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Front Camera Unavailable"	**The operation conditions of the front camera (temperature, etc.) are not met.** **→ When the operation conditions of the front camera (temperature, etc.) are met, the LDA system will become available. Turn the LDA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LDA system back on.**

Warning message	Details/Actions
"Lane Departure Alert Unavailable"	**The LDA system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera.** **→ Turn the LDA system off and follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedures for the warning message. Afterward, drive the vehicle for a short time, and then turn the LDA system back on.**
"Lane Departure Alert Unavailable Below Approx 50km/h"	**The LDA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph).** **→ Drive the vehicle at approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.**

If a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

■ **Customization**

The following settings can be changed.

Function	Setting details
Lane departure alert function	Adjust alert sensitivity
Steering control function	Turn steering wheel assistance on and off
Vehicle sway warning function	Turn function on and off
	Adjust alert sensitivity

For how to change settings, refer to P.420.

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

*: If equipped

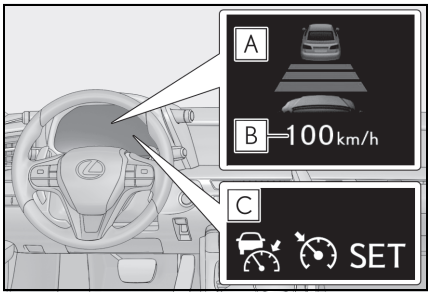
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.230)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.234)

System components

Meter display

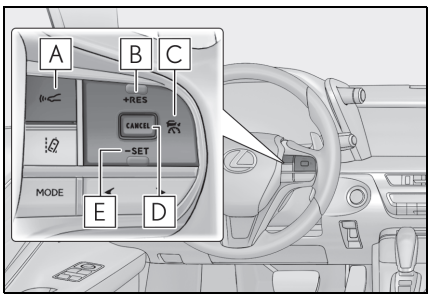


A Display

B Set speed

C Indicators

■ Operation switches



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cruise control main switch

D Cancel switch

E "-SET" switch

WARNING

■ **Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.235
  - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.236
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range off using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

WARNING

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range has limited capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.

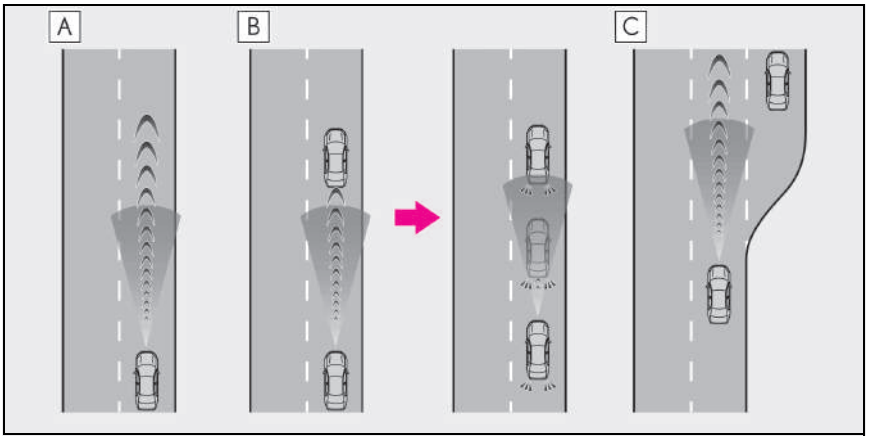
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar sensor or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on downhill slopes.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pressing the "+RES" switch or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising.

C Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant

speed cruising.

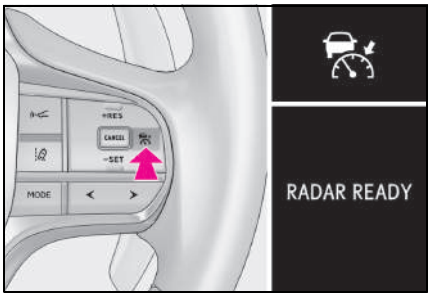
Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.234)

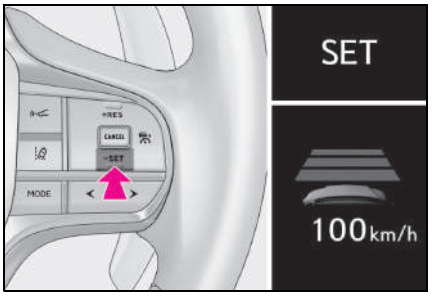


2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

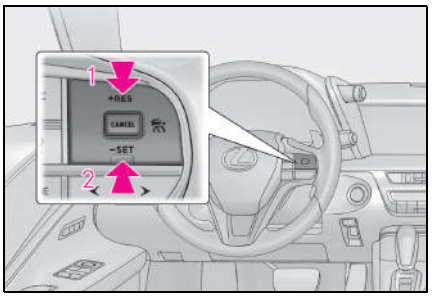
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

If the switch is operated while the vehicle speed is below approximately 50 km/h (30 mph) and a preceding vehicle is present, the set speed will be adjusted to approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed
(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.234), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

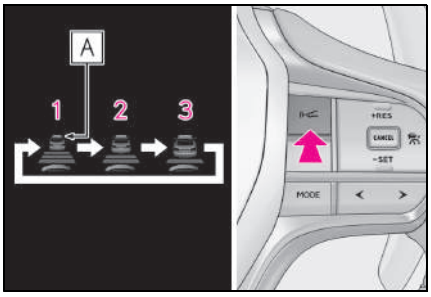
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to ON.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

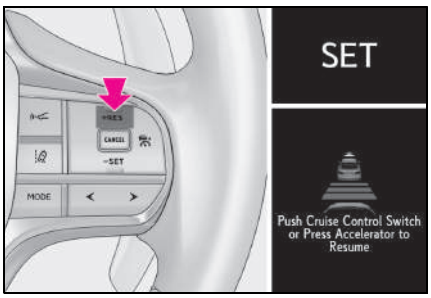
Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

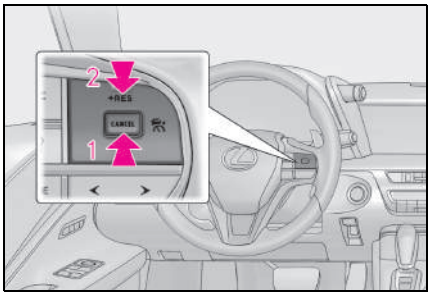
After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, press the "+RES" switch.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of

you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

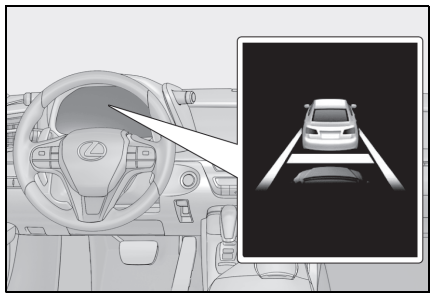
The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.
(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, when a vehicle ahead is not detected, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



■ Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

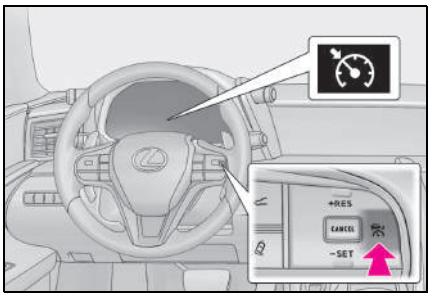
Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar sensor, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch with the cruise control off.



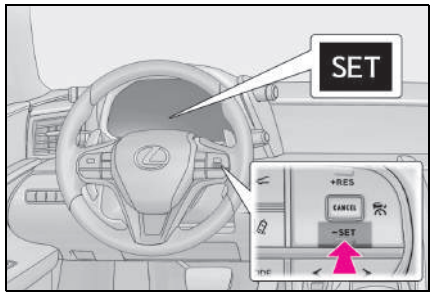
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.231

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.233



■ Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when

- The shift position is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch.
- Vehicle speed is at or above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).
  However, when a preceding vehicle is detected, the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set even if the vehicle speed is below approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising

- Pressing the "+RES" switch while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls at or below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) when there are no vehicles ahead.
- The preceding vehicle leaves the lane when your vehicle is following at a vehicle speed at or below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph). Otherwise, the sensor can not properly detect the vehicle. ("CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE No Preceding Vehicles" is displayed on the multi-information display)
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- When snow mode is set. (vehicles with snow mode switch)
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Brake system operation sound**

If the brakes are applied automatically while the vehicle is in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, a brake system operation sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display**

The radar cruise control system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

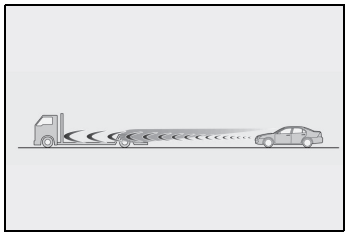
■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

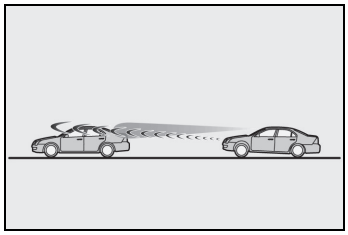
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.233) may not be activated.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds

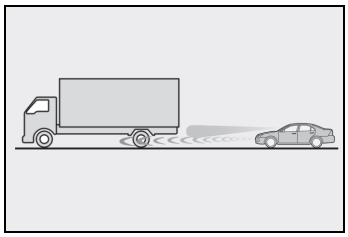
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

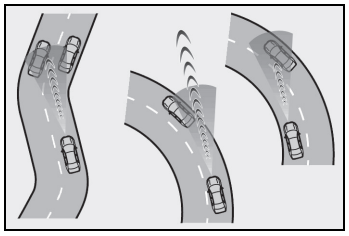


■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

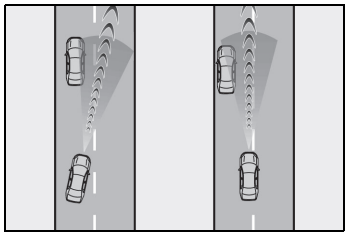
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Dynamic radar cruise control*

*: If equipped

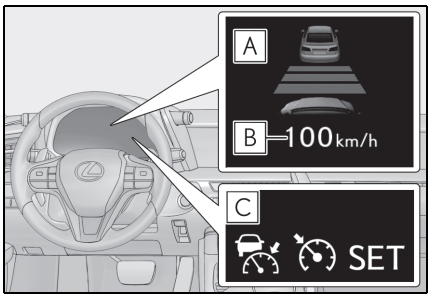
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.239)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.242)

System components

Meter display

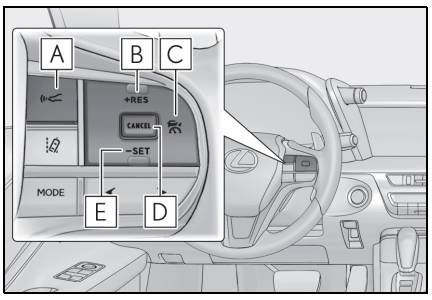


A Display

B Set speed

C Indicators

Operation switches



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cruise control main switch

D Cancel switch

E "-SET" switch

WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided. Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.244
  - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.245

WARNING

- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control off using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has limited capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways

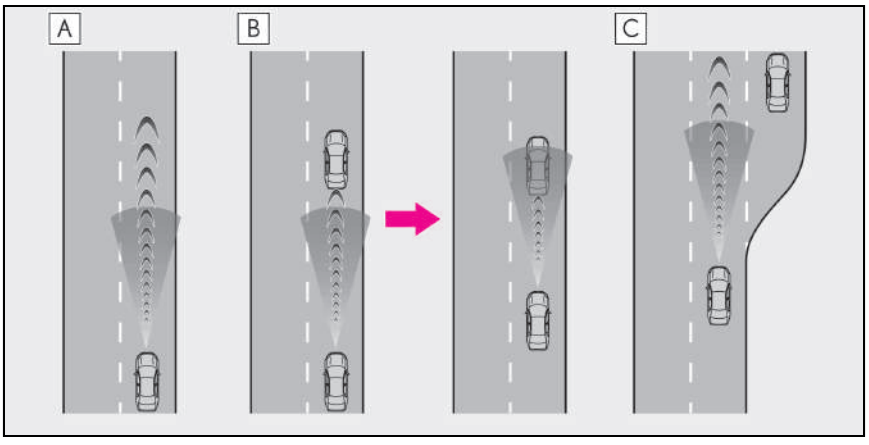
WARNING

- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar sensor or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

C Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

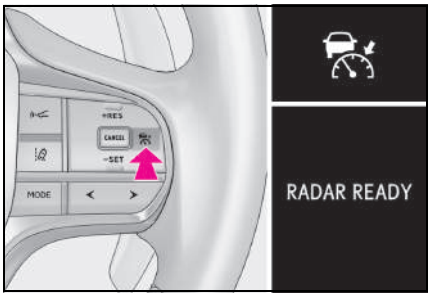
Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

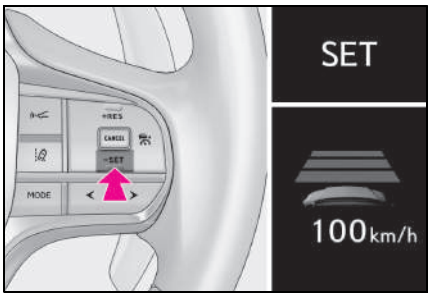
If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.242)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 50 km/h [30 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

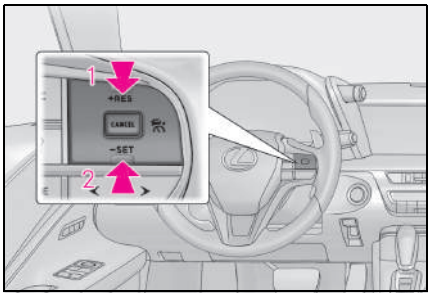
Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.242), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

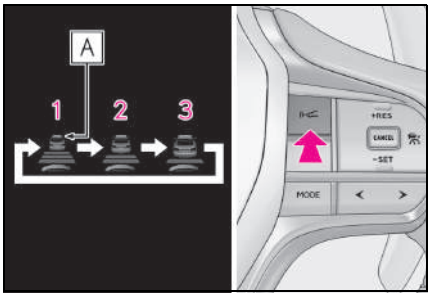
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long

2 Medium

3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to ON.

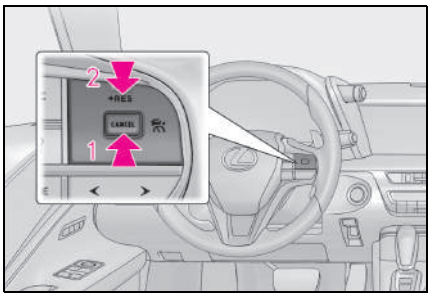
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

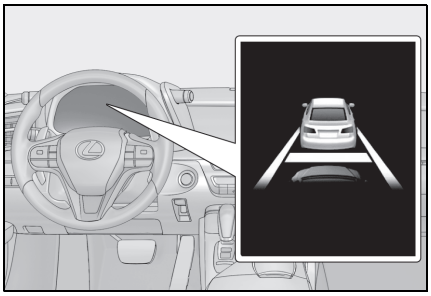
The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

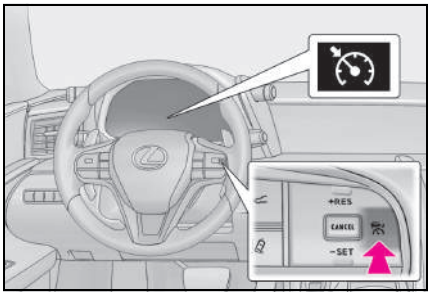
When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle

distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar sensor, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch with the cruise control off.



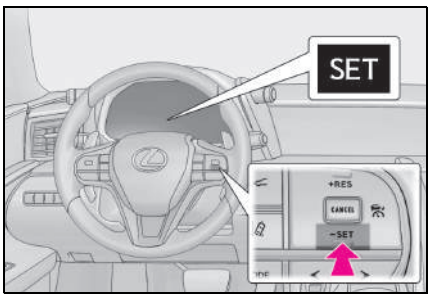
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.240

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.242



■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift position is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch.
- Vehicle speed is at or above approximately 50 km/h (30 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls at or below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- When snow mode is set. (vehicles with snow mode switch)
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Brake system operation sound**

If the brakes are applied automatically while the vehicle is in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, a brake system operation sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display**

The radar cruise control system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

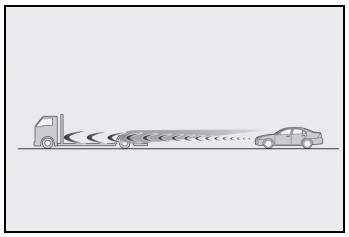
■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

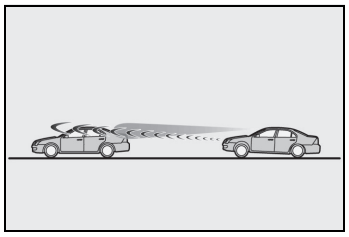
■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.242) may not be activated.

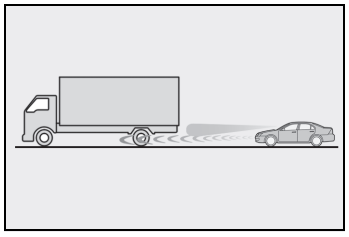
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



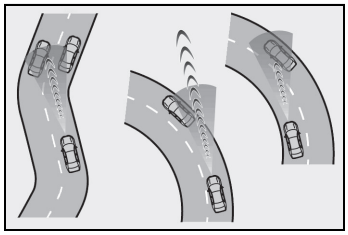
- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



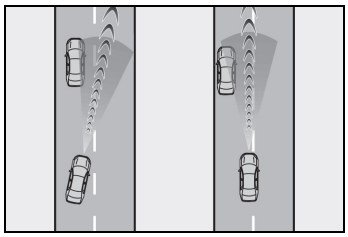
■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Cruise control*

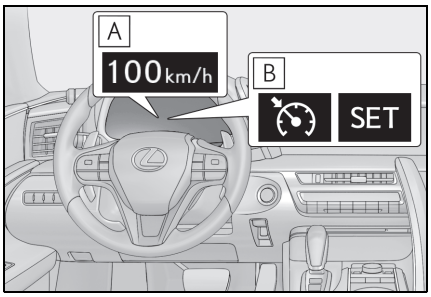
*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Use the cruise control on freeways and highways.

System components

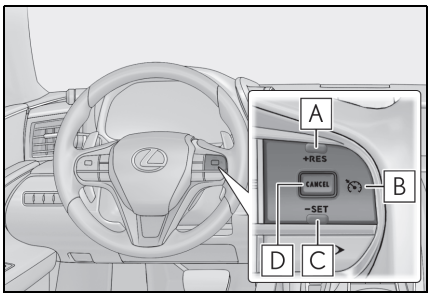
■ Meter display



A Set speed

B Indicators

■ Operation switches



A "+RES" switch

B Cruise control main switch

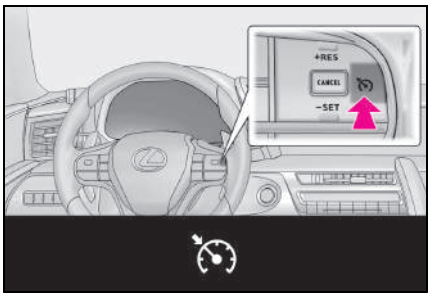
C "-SET" switch

D Cancel switch

Setting the vehicle speed

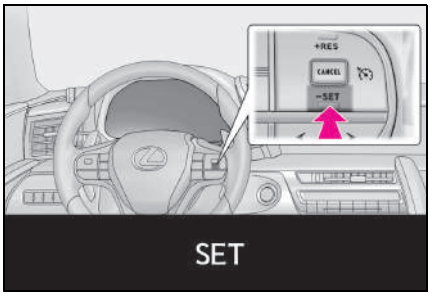
1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.
Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.



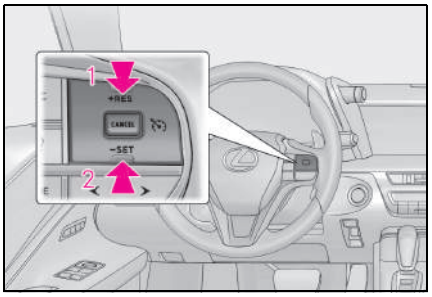
2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is obtained.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

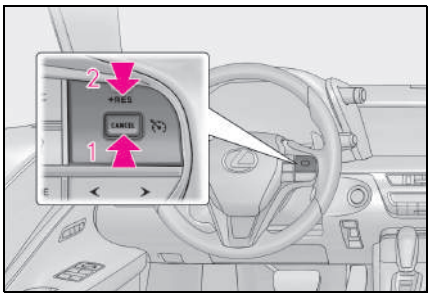
Large adjustment: Press and hold switch.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph) each time the switch is pressed.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the switch is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift position is in D.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pressing the -/SET switch to set the new speed.

■ Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls at or more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.

■ If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display

Press the cruise control main switch once to deactivate the system, and then press the switch again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

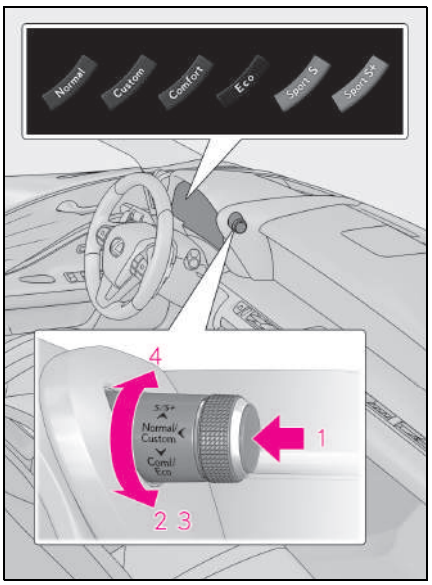
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- During emergency towing

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

Selecting the driving mode



1 Normal mode/Custom mode

Normal mode and custom mode are selected by pressing the driving mode select switch. Each time the switch is pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and custom mode. When custom mode is selected, the "Custom" indicator comes on.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when not in normal mode.

• Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance.

Suitable for city driving.

When the shift position is in D, an appropriate gear for sporty driving may automatically be selected according to driver performance and driving conditions.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the power train, chassis and air conditioning system functions set to your preferred settings.

Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of Center Display. (→P.420)

2 Comfort mode

By controlling the suspension, riding comfort is further enhanced. Suitable for city driving.

When not in comfort mode and the driving mode select switch is turned forward, the "Comfort" indicator comes on.

3 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When in comfort mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned forward, the "Eco" indicator comes on.

4 Sport mode

• SPORT S mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned backward, the "Sport S" indicator comes on.

• SPORT S+ mode

Provides earlier downshift timing than SPORT S mode in order to maintain a high engine speed and provides faster gear

changes. This mode also changes the steering feel, suspension control and VDIM control, making it suitable for powerful sporty driving.

When in SPORT S mode, if the driving mode select switch is turned backward, the "Sport S+" indicator comes on.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.288)
- Adjust the fan speed (→P.283, 285)
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Automatic deactivation of sport mode and custom mode**

If the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode or custom mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

■ **Driving mode pop-up display**

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the side display. (→P.279)

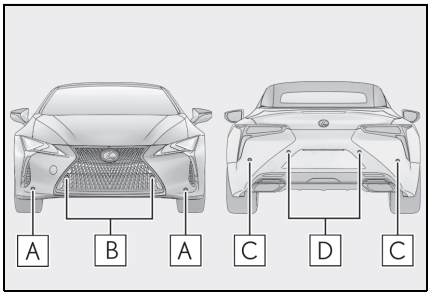
For custom mode, select "Setting" on the display to customize the driving mode.

Lexus parking assist-sensor

The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped), Center Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

System components

■ **Types of sensors**



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

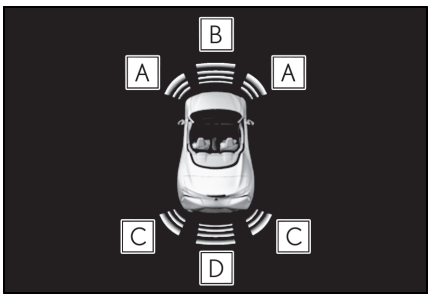
D Rear center sensors

■ **Display**

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display, head-up display and Center Display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

- Multi-information display and head-

up display



A Front corner sensor detection

B Front center sensor detection

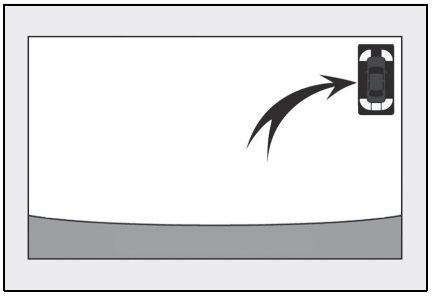
C Rear corner sensor detection

D Rear center sensor detection

● Center Display

A graphic is shown when the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed (insert display)

A simplified image is displayed on the upper right corner of Center Display when an obstacle is detected.



Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

1 Press < or > of the meter control switches, and select ⚙.

2 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches, and select "Parking Assist", and press "OK".

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator comes on to inform the driver that the system is operational.

■ The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when

● Front center sensors:
- The engine switch is in ON.
- The shift position is in a position other than P or R.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).

● Front corner sensors:
- The engine switch is in ON.
- The shift position is in a position other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
  (At any speed when the shift position is in R)

● Rear corner and rear center sensors:
- The engine switch is in ON.
- The shift position is in R.

■ Muting the buzzer sound

● To mute the buzzer sound:

The buzzer can be temporarily muted by pressing "OK" of the meter control switches while an obstacle detection display is shown on the multi-information display.

● To cancel the mute:

Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations.
- When the shift position is changed (except shifting from D to N, or N to D)
- When the vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 10 km/h (6 mph) with the shift position in D
- When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned off once and turned on again

- When the engine switch is turned off once and turned to ON again

If "Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the sensor, the system should return to normal.

Also, due to the sensor being frozen at low temperatures, a malfunction display may appear or an obstacle may not be detected. If the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

If "Parking Assist Malfunction" or "Parking Assist Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

There is a malfunction and the device may not be working properly.

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Sensor detection information

● The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
- The sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensor in the vicinity.
- The sensor is splashed with water or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.
- People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

● The following situations may occur during use.

- Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
- Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
- There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
- Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.

- It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
- It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the sounds of other systems.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.420)

WARNING

When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

NOTICE

When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes or shows continuously, and a beep sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.
- If the bumper or grille collides with something.
- If the display flashes or shows continuously without beeping, except when the mute function has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
  If the error occurs even when there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

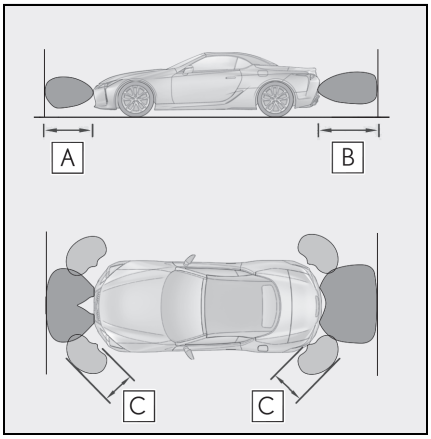
Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.

Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close

to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

■ Multi-information display, head-up display and Center Display

Sensors that detect an obstacle will illuminate continuously or blink.

Display*1	Approximate distance to obstacle
 (continuous*2 or blinking slowly*3)	Front center sensor: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 50 cm (1.6 ft.) Rear center sensor: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)
 (continuous*2 or blinking*3)	Front center sensor: 50 cm (1.6 ft.) to 40 cm (1.3 ft.) Rear center sensor: 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.) Front and rear corner sensor: 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)
 (continuous*2 or blinking rapidly*3)	Front center sensor: 40 cm (1.3 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 35 cm (1.1 ft.) Front and rear corner sensor: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
 (blinking*2 or continuous*3)	Front center sensor: Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.) Rear center sensor: Less than 35 cm (1.1 ft.) Front and rear corner sensor: Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)

*1: The illustrations show the graphics on the Multi-information display, and differ from the graphics on the head-up display and Center Display. Depending on the distance of the obstacle, the sensor display on Center Display illuminates or blinks in various cycles, although the width of it does not change.

*2: Multi-information display and head-up display

*3: Center Display

■ Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When

the vehicle comes within the following distance of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously:

- Front center sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
- Corner sensors: Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)
- Rear center sensors: Approximately 35 cm (1.1 ft.)

● When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor uses the sensors installed behind the rear bumper. The system is intended to assist the driver check areas that are not easily visible. The system has the following 2 functions:

● The BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) function

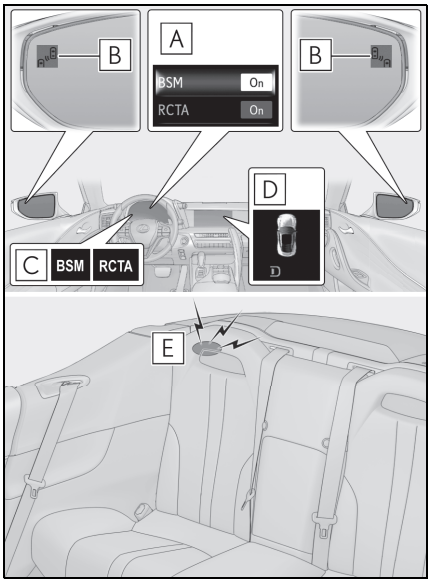
Assists the driver in making a decision when changing lanes

● The RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function

Assists the driver when backing up

These functions use same sensors.

System components



A Multi-information display

The BSM function/RCTA function can be turned on/off.
The RCTA function is available when the BSM function is on.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

BSM function:
When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

RCTA function:
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C BSM indicator/RCTA indicator

When the BSM function/RCTA function is turned on, the indicator comes on.

D Monitor screen display (RCTA function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.262) for the detected side will be displayed on the monitor screen. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from the left at the rear of the vehicle.

E RCTA buzzer (RCTA function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer will sound. The buzzer also sounds for approximately 1 second immediately after the BSM function is operated to turn the system on.

Turning the BSM function/RCTA function on/off

1 Press < or > of the meter control switches, select ⚙.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, select "BSM", and press "OK".

3 Press ∧ or ∨ of the meter control switches, select "BSM" or "RCTA", and press "OK".

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Water, snow, mud, etc., may be built up in the vicinity of the sensor area of the bumper. Removing the water, snow, mud, etc., from the vicinity of the sensor area of the bumper should return it to normal. Also, the sensor may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold weather.

■ When "Blind Spot Monitor System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display

There may be a sensor malfunction or voltage abnormality. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.420)

■ Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa



▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates



▶ For vehicles sold in Bahrain

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules
1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

▶ For vehicles sold in Qatar



▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2014/254

▶ For vehicles sold in Lebanon

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

▶ For vehicles sold in Korea

MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3A

상호 또는 성명	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH
기기 명칭	물체감지센서용 무선기기(24GHz 주파수대를 사용하는 기기)
기본모델명	SRR3-A
제조자/제조국가	CONTINENTAL AUTOMOTIVE GMBH / 독일

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in the Philippines

NTC
Type Approved
No.: ESD-1409920C

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

▶ For vehicles sold in Indonesia

37739/I/SDPPI/2017

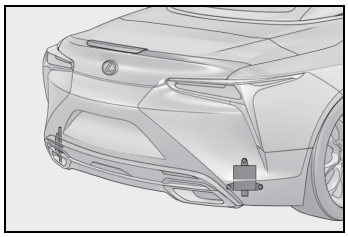
2130

WARNING

■ Handling the radar sensor

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

● Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.255) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the BSM function (→P.260) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



● Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
- If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.

● Do not disassemble the sensor.

● Do not attach stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.

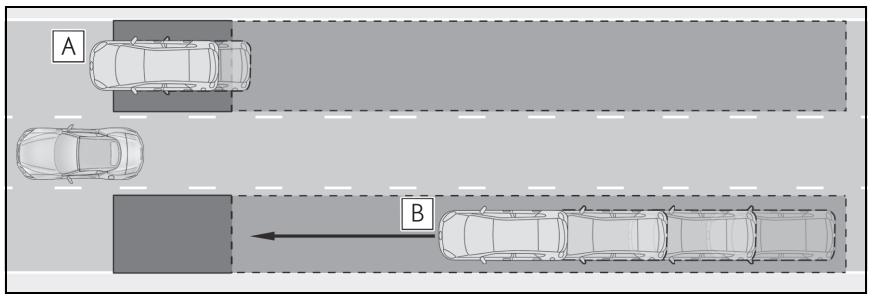
● Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.

● Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

BSM function

■ Operation of the BSM function

The BSM function uses radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.

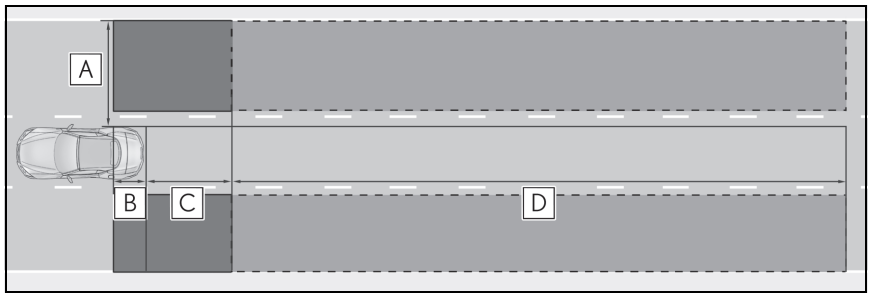


A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ BSM function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*2

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle

cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

■ **The BSM function is operational when**

The BSM function is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The BSM function is on.
- The shift position is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ **The BSM function will detect a vehicle when**

The BSM function will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ **Conditions under which the BSM function will not detect a vehicle**

The BSM function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle.*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the BSM function may not function correctly**

- The BSM function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
  - When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
  - When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
  - As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
  - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
  - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
  - When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
  - When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) or towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle
  - When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
  - Immediately after the BSM function is

turned on

● Instances of the BSM function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) or towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

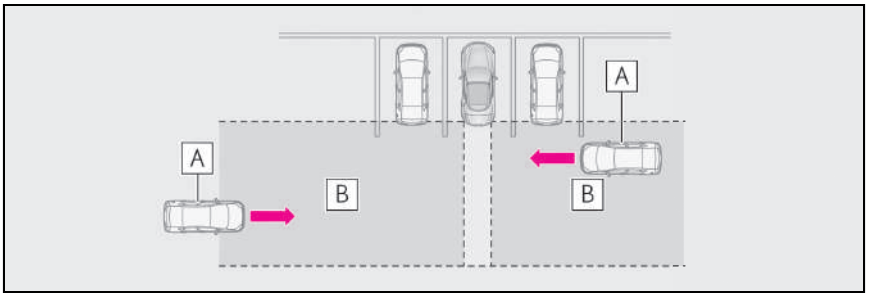
The BSM function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the BSM function. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

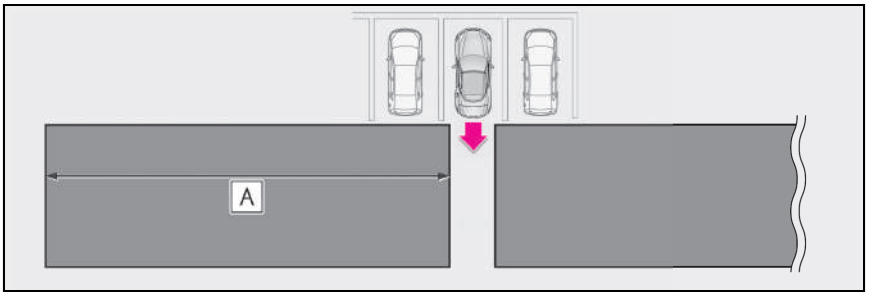
■ RCTA icon display

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the monitor screen

Display	Content
	A vehicle is approaching from the left at the rear of the vehicle
	A vehicle is approaching from the right at the rear of the vehicle
	Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle
	The RCTA function is malfunctioning (→P.255)

■ RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
28 km/h (18 mph) (fast)	20 m (65 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

The RCTA function is operational when

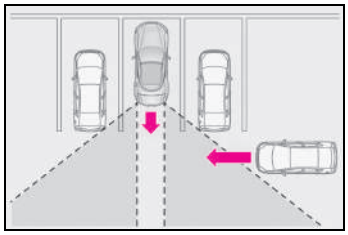
The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift position is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

Conditions under which the RCTA function will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space next to your vehicle
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions

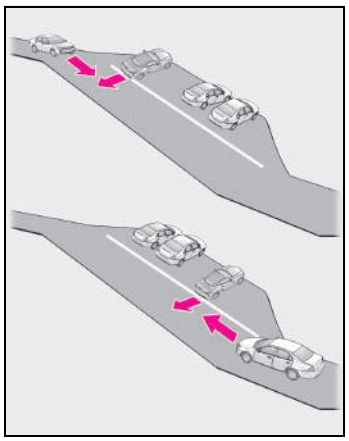


- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*

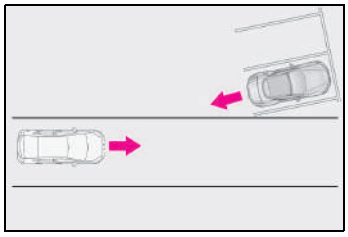
*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

Conditions under which the RCTA function may not function correctly

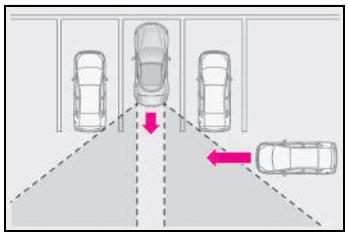
- The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
  - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
  - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
  - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
  - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
  - When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
  - When a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle.
  - When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



  - When backing out of a shallow angle parking spot

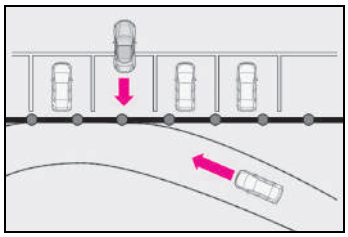


- Immediately after the RCTA function is turned on
- Immediately after the engine is started with the RCTA function on
- When the sensors cannot detect a vehicle due to obstructions



● Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle
- When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short
- When a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the function

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The RCTA function is only a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle. As the RCTA function may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary. Over reliance on this function may lead to an accident resulting death or serious injury.

Exhaust Gas Filter system*

*: If equipped

The Exhaust Gas Filter system is designed to collect particulate matter in the exhaust gases using an exhaust gas filter installed to the exhaust pipes.

NOTICE

■ To prevent the Exhaust Gas Filter system from failing

- Do not use fuel other that the specified type
- Do not modify the exhaust pipes

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System)

The electronically controlled system generates braking force corresponding to the brake operation

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

■ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning

when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ **Active Cornering Assist (ACA) (if equipped)**

Helps to prevent the vehicle from drifting to the outer side by performing inner wheel brake control when attempting to accelerate while turning

■ **Hill-start assist control**

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ **AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System)**

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior vehicle stability, and helps good vehicle posture

Also, the damping force changes depending on the selected driving mode. (→P.248)

■ **VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)**

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRC, VSC, hill-start assist control and EPS systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, engine output, steering assist (if equipped), and steering ratio (if equipped)

■ **Emergency brake signal**

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind

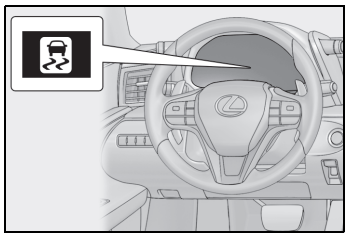
■ **Secondary Collision Brake (if equipped)**

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automatically controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision

---

■ **When the TRC/VSC/ABS systems are operating**

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/ABS systems are operating.



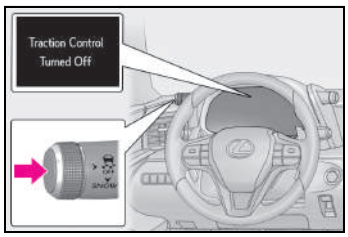
■ **Disabling the TRC system**

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing the OFF SNOW switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the OFF SNOW switch.

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the OFF SNOW switch again to turn the system back on.



Turning off both TRC and VSC systems

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the OFF SNOW switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press the OFF SNOW switch again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Collision System), PCS will also be disabled (only Pre-Collision warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.210)

When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the OFF SNOW switch has not been pressed

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

Operating conditions of hill-start assist control

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift position is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift position is shifted to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- 2 seconds at maximum elapsed after the brake pedal is released.

Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRC and hill-start assist control systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.

Active Cornering Assist operation sounds and vibrations

When the Active Cornering Assist is operated, operation sounds and vibrations may be generated from the brake system, but this is not a malfunction.

ECB operating sound

ECB operating sound may be heard in the following cases, but it does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is

operated.

- Motor sound of the brake system heard from the front part of the vehicle when the driver's door is opened.
- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when one or two minutes passed after the stop of the engine.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Operating conditions of Active Cornering Assist**

The system operates when the following occurs.

- TRC/VSC can operate
- The driver is attempting to accelerate while turning
- The system detects that the vehicle is drifting to the outer side
- The brake pedal is released

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operates:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

■ **Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions**

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion.

However, the system does not operate in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed is below 10 km/h (6 mph)
- Components are damaged

■ **Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation**

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations:

- The vehicle speed drops below approximately 10 km/h (6 mph)
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result.

Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC/VSC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Active Cornering Assist does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on Active Cornering Assist. Active Cornering Assist may not operate effectively when accelerating down slopes or driving on slippery road surfaces.
- When Active Cornering Assist frequently operates, Active Cornering Assist may temporarily stop operating to ensure proper operation of the brakes, TRC and VSC.

■ Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the TRC/ABS/VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

WARNING

■ **Secondary Collision Brake**

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires.

Ensure that all tires are the specified size and the same brand.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

NOTICE

■ Driving with tire chains

Do not fit tire chains. Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and suspension, and adversely affect driving performance.

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a door or a side window, or move wipers that are frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice, and then wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- When the outside door handle is frozen, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control. If the outside door handles remain retracted and do not move even if the doors are unlocked using the wireless remote control, pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice and wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing. The outside door handle may not retract due to ice, however, the outside door handle will return to the normal position after the ice melts.
- To ensure proper operation of the

climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.

- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, soft top roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

To protect windshield wipers

→P.193

NOTICE

When the side windows or rear quarter windows are frozen

→P.159

When removing ice that accumulates on the windshield glass and windows

Do not strike the ice. The windshield glass and windows may be cracked.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and shift the shift position to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels.

Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

Selecting tire chains

Tire chains cannot be mounted.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Windshield wipers

To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when heavy snow or icy conditions are expected, change the rest position of the windshield wipers from the retracted position below the hood to the service position using the wiper lever. (→P.194)

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO_2 emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.248)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.95)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your stopping position. Release the accelerator pedal early and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the A/C switch on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the A/C switch off. Turning the A/C switch on when unneces-

sary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
- Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.
- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.313)

5-1. Remote Touch

Remote Touch 276

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 280

5-3. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system 282

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators/neck heaters 291

5-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 295

5-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features 297

Trunk features 299

5-6. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 300

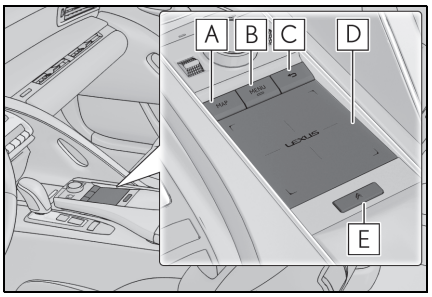
Remote Touch

The Remote Touch can be used to operate Center Display.

For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

Remote Touch operation

■ Switches



A "MAP" button / "HOME" button

"MAP" button: Press to display the current location.*

"HOME" button: Press to display the home screen.*

B "MENU" button

Press to display the menu screen.

C Back button

Press to display the previous screen.

D Touchpad

Slide your finger on the touchpad and move the pointer to select a function, letter and screen button.

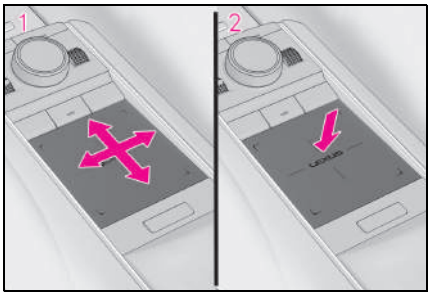
Press the touchpad to enter the selected function, letter or screen button. Certain finger movements on the touchpad can perform functions, such as changing map scalings and scrolling list screens.

E Sub function button

When is displayed on the screen, a function screen assigned to the screen can be displayed.

*: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Using the touchpad



1 Select: Touch the touchpad to select the desired button on the screen.

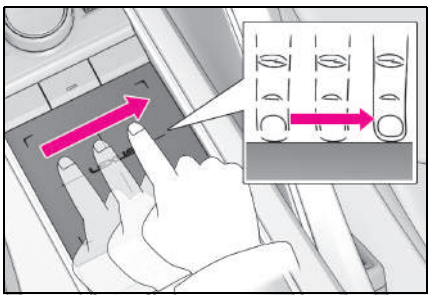
2 Enter: The buttons on the screen can be selected by either depressing or double tapping on the touchpad. Once a button has been selected, the screen will change.

■ Touch operation

Operations are performed by touching the touchpad with your finger.

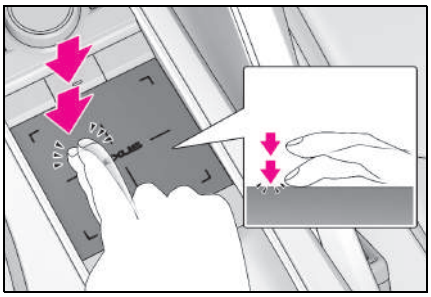
● Trace

Trace the pad surface while maintaining contact with the touchpad. Moving the cursor and the pointer.



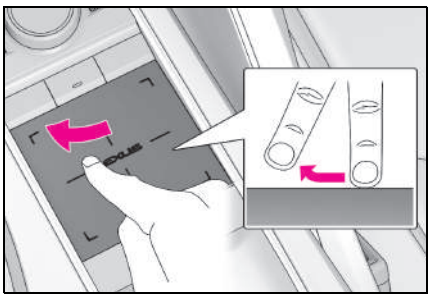
● Double tap

Tap the touchpad twice, quickly. Select the button on the screen.



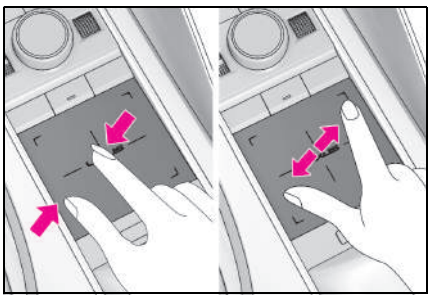
● Flick

Quick and long movement along the touchpad with your finger. Move the list screen.



● Pinch in/Pinch out

Slide fingers toward each other or apart on the touchpad. Change the scale of the map.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the Remote Touch.

- Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact.
- Do not push the touchpad with a strong force or use a sharp pointed object to operate the pad.

Center Display overview

■ Menu screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the menu screen.

The display may differ depending on the type of the system.



Switch	Function
	Select to display the destination screen.*1, 2
	Select to operate the audio control screen.*1
	Select to display the hands-free control screen.*1
	Select to display application screen.*1, 3
/	When an Apple CarPlay/Android Auto connection is established and this button displays "Apple CarPlay"/"Android Auto", select to display the home screen of Apple CarPlay/Android Auto.*1, 3

Switch	Function
	Select to display the information screen.*1 (→P.111)
	Select to display the general settings screen.*1
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.285)

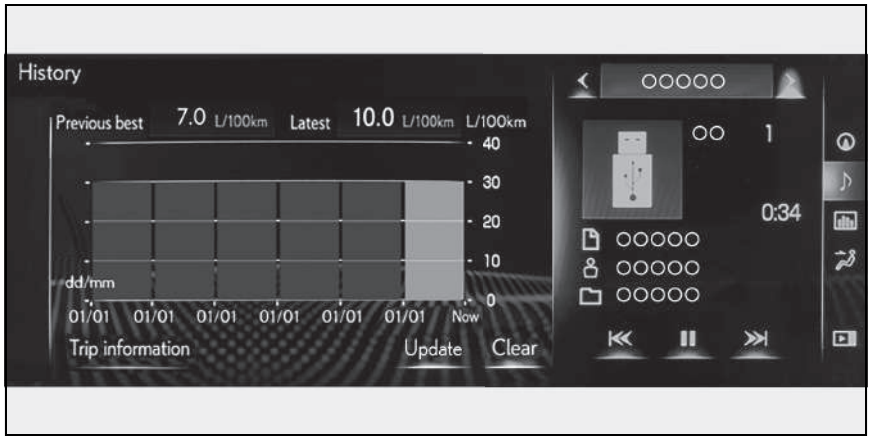
*1: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped

*3: This function is not made available in some countries or areas.

■ Split-screen display

Different information can be displayed on the left and right of the screen. For example, the air conditioning system screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed. The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.



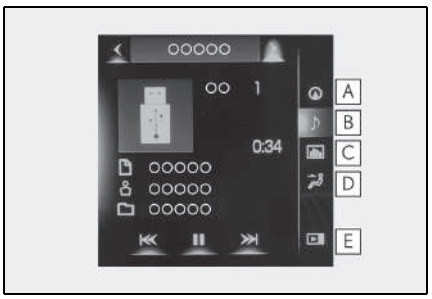
■ Main display

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Side display

The following functions can be displayed and operated on the side display.

Select ❮ or ❯ to display the desired screen.



A Navigation system*1, 2

B Audio*2

C Vehicle information (→P.112)

D Air conditioning system (→P.287)

E Show/hide the side display

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Screen display during low temperatures

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

Lexus Climate Concierge

The seat heaters (if equipped), seat ventilators, heated steering wheel (if equipped) and neck heaters (if equipped) are each automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside and cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch and select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen. Then, select on the sub menu (→P.285) to display the Lexus Climate Concierge control screen.

Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge

Select

The indicator on the Lexus Climate Concierge control screen illuminates, and the automatic air conditioning system, seat heaters and ventilators, heated steering wheel, and neck heaters operate in automatic mode.

If any of the system is operated manually, the indicator turns off. However, all other functions continue to operate in automatic mode.



■ When using the Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge can be operated on the sub function menu or option control screen. (→P.285)

Operation of each system

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P.282)

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver seat and passenger seat.

■ Seat heaters (if equipped) and ventilators (→P.291)

Heating or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, opening/closing status of the soft top roof, etc.

The seat heater and ventilator of the front passenger seat operate in automatic mode if a passenger is detected.

■ Heated steering wheel (if equipped) (→P.291)

Heated steering wheel operates automatically according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, open-

ing/closing status of the soft top roof, etc.

■ **Neck heaters (if equipped) (→P.291)**

Temperature and fan speed of the neck heater are changed automatically according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, opening/closing status of the soft top roof, vehicle speed, etc.

The neck heater of the front passenger seat operate in automatic mode if a passenger is detected.

■ **Seat heater/ventilator/neck heater operation**

When automatic mode is selected using the seat heater/ventilator switch, passenger detection is not performed.

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting or opening/closing state of the soft top roof.

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.277)

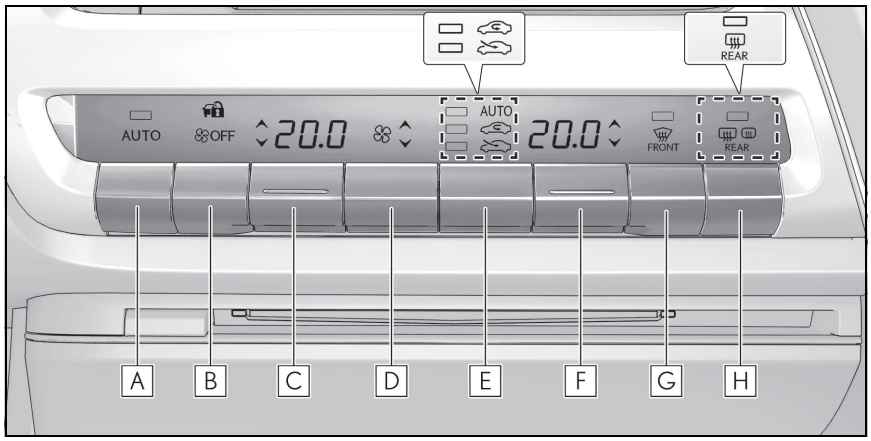
The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display.

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Air conditioning controls



A Automatic mode switch

B Off switch

C Left-hand side temperature control switch

D Fan speed control switch

E Outside/recirculated air mode switch

F Right-hand side temperature control switch

G Windshield defogger switch

H Rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers (if equipped) switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature**

Operate the temperature control switch upwards to increase the temperature and downwards to decrease the temperature.

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

■ **Setting the fan speed**

Operate the fan speed control switch upwards to increase the fan speed and downwards to decrease the fan speed.

Press the off switch to turn the fan off.

■ **Changing the air flow mode**

→P.285

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

▶ Type A

Operate the outside/recirculated air mode switch upwards or downwards.

The mode changes as follows each time the switch is operated.

automatic mode →  (outside air mode) →  (recirculated air mode) → automatic mode

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

▶ Type B

Operate the outside/recirculated air mode switch upwards or downwards.

The mode switches between  (outside air mode) and  (recirculated air mode) modes each time the switch is operated.

■ **Defogging the windshield**

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode switch to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

■ **Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped)**

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

■ **Defogging the rear window (if equipped)**

Press the rear window defogger switch

to defog the rear window.

The defogger will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

■ **Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)**

→P.287

■ **Blower customization (if equipped)**

→P.287

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **When driving on dusty roads**

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys**

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to ON will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock the passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting* when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (if equipped) (→P.285)
- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.248)

■ **When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occur-

ring:
- It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
- The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode or pollen removal mode.

● Except for GCC countries*, Jordan and Lebanon: When parking, the system automatically switches to fresh air intake mode to encourage better air circulation throughout the vehicle, helping to reduce odors that occur when starting the vehicle.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P.352

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. A/C auto switch operation) can be changed. (Customizable features →P.420)

WARNING

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating (if equipped)**

Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Air conditioning control screen

■ Main control screen

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen.

B to E can be adjusted by performing the following operations.

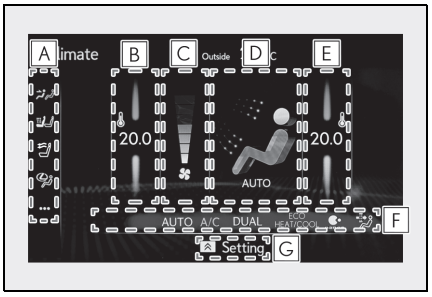
Flick operation: Move the pointer to the desired item and flick the touchpad up or down.

The item can be adjusted by one level.

Trace operation: After selecting the desired item, trace the pad surface.

The item can be adjusted by the amount that you trace.

Trace operation cannot be used while driving.



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the main screen.

: Display the air conditioning control screen

: Display the heated steering wheel (if equipped)/seat heater (if equipped)/seat ventilator control screen (→P.291)

: Display the neck heater (if equipped) control screen (→P.291)

: Display the Lexus Climate Concierge control screen (→P.280)

: Display the option control screen

B Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

C Adjust the fan speed setting

D Select the air flow mode

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

E Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

F Function on/off indicators

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

G Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.

: Set Lexus Climate Concierge (→P.280)

"AUTO": Set automatic mode on/off (→P.288)

"Off": Turn the fan off

"A/C": Set cooling and dehumidification function

"DUAL": Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.289)

FAST ECO: Changing the fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation (Blower customization) (if equipped)

ECO HEAT/COOL: Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)

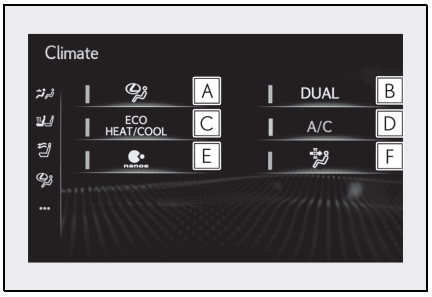
■ Option control screen

Select ••• on the sub menu to display the option control screen.

The functions can be switched on and off.

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the screen.

▶ Type A



A Set Lexus Climate Concierge (→P.280)

B Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.289)

C Set eco air conditioning mode (if equipped) (→P.288)

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

D Cooling and dehumidification func-

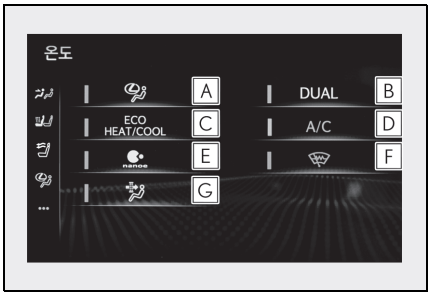
tion

E nanoe™* system on/off

F Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

▶ Type B



A Set Lexus Climate Concierge (→P.280)

B Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.289)

C Set eco air conditioning mode (→P.288)

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

D Cooling and dehumidification function

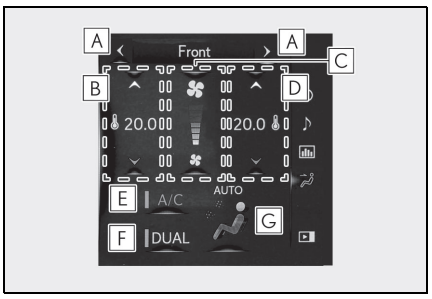
E nanoe™* system on/off

F Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (Windshield wiper de-icer) (if equipped)

G Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

■ Side display



A Display the heated steering wheel (if equipped) /seat heaters (if equipped) /seat ventilators control screen (→P.292)

B Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

C Adjust the fan speed setting

D Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

E Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

F Adjust the temperature for the driver's and front passenger's seats separately ("DUAL" mode) (→P.289)

G Select the air flow mode

■ **Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)**

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

The windshield de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

■ **Blower customization (if equipped)**

Fan speed setting during the automatic mode operation can be customized.

Each time FAST ECO is selected, the fan speed setting mode changes as follows.

"NORMAL" → "ECO" → "FAST" → "NORMAL"

■ **Eco air conditioning mode (if equipped)**

When Eco drive mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, eco air conditioning mode turns on.

When a drive mode other than Eco drive mode is selected, eco air conditioning mode may turn off.

■ **Pollen removal mode**

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will automatically turn off after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate or the outside/recirculated air mode may not switch to (recirculated air) mode.

Pollens is filtered even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

■ **nanoe™ system**

The air conditioning system adopts nanoe™ technology. This helps to fill the cabin with refreshing air by emitting slightly acidic nanoe™ ions coated with water particles through the front center vent on driver's side*.

- When the fan is turned on and nanoe™ on the option control screen is selected, the nanoe™ system is activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, performance will be limited.
  - The , or air outlets are being used.
  - The front center vent on driver's side is open.
- When nanoe™ is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

*: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ system may not operate at full capacity.

WARNING

■ **To prevent burns (vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer)**

Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

■ **nanoe™ generator**

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the nanoe™**

Do not insert anything into the driver's side vent, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the driver's side vent. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

Using automatic mode

1 Press the automatic mode switch or select "AUTO" on the sub function menu. (→P.285)

2 Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch to switch to automatic air intake mode. (if equipped)

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Adjust the temperature setting.

4 To stop the operation, press the off switch or select "Off" on the sub function menu. (→P.285)

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ **Using automatic mode**

- Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the automatic mode switch is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

- Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.
- When the soft top roof is opened, the fan speed and air outlets may be automatically changed according to the sunlight or vehicle speed.

■ **Windshield fog detection function**

When automatic mode is set, the humidity sensor detects fog on the windshield and controls the air conditioning system to prevent fog.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control (if equipped)**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

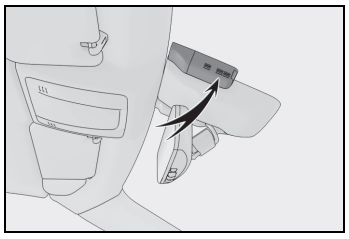
NOTICE

■ **Humidity sensor**

In order to detect fog on the windshield, a sensor which monitors the temperature of the windshield, the surround humidity, etc. is installed.

Follow these points to avoid damaging the sensor:

- Do not disassemble the sensor
- Do not spray the glass cleaner on the sensor or subject it to strong impacts
- Do not stick anything on the sensor



Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode)

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

- Select "DUAL" on the sub function menu. (→P.285)
- Select "DUAL" on the option control screen.
- Adjust the passenger's side temperature setting.

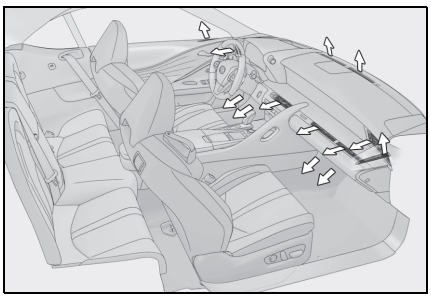
The indicator on the main control screen comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

Air outlet layout and operations

■ **Location of air outlets**

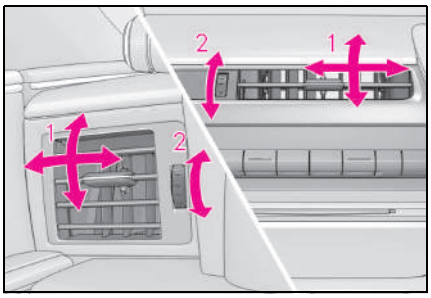
The air outlets and air volume changes

according to the selected air flow mode.



■ Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets

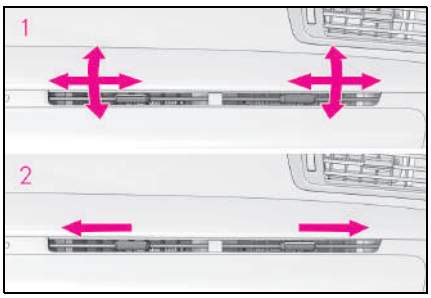
▶ Center/side



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Above the glove box



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Move the knob to the most outside position to close the vent

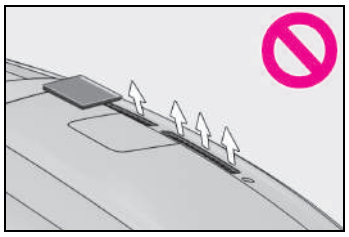
■ If an object falls into the air outlet above the glove box

Remove the panel inside the glove box to take out the object. (→P.352)

WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield defogger from operating improperly

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters*/seat ventilators/neck heaters*

*: If equipped

● Heated steering wheel

Warms up the grip of the steering wheel

● Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

● Seat ventilators

Maintain good air flow on the seat upholstery by sucking air into the seats

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch and select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen. Then, select on the sub menu (→P.285) to display the heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators control screen.

● Neck heaters

Warm up the head restraints near the neck by blowing the warm air from the air outlet on the head restraints

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch and select "Climate" to display the air conditioning control screen. Then, select on the sub menu (→P.285) to display the neck heaters control screen.

WARNING

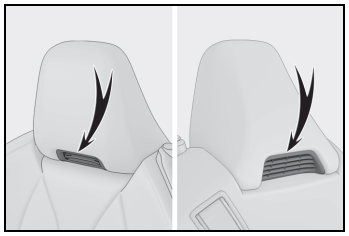
■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel, seats or neck heaters when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

■ To prevent burns and fire

Do not put fingers or foreign matters into the air outlets or intake vents. Doing so may cause burns or fire.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent damage to the neck heaters

Do not block the air outlets or intake vents of the neck heaters. If the air outlets or intake vents become blocked, heat is accumulated and the neck heaters may be damaged.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is off.

Control screen

■ Main display

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch, select the button on the screen.

▶ Except the neck heaters

A to C can be adjusted by performing the following operations.

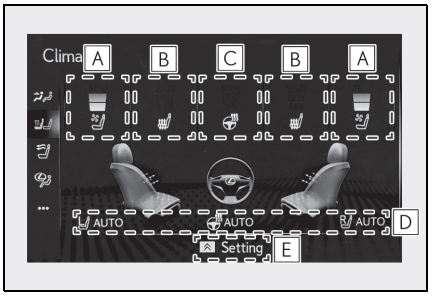
Flick operation: Move the pointer to the desired item and flick the touchpad up or down.

The item can be adjusted by one level.

Trace operation: After selecting the desired item, trace the pad surface.

The item can be adjusted by the amount that you trace.

Trace operation cannot be used while driving.



A Adjust the seat ventilator fan speed level

The seat ventilator can be adjusted in 3 levels.

When the seat ventilator is operated, the fan speed level is displayed on the screen.

B Adjust the seat heater temperature level

The seat heater can be adjusted in 3 levels.

When the seat heater is operated, the temperature level is displayed on the screen.

C Adjust the heated steering wheel temperature level

The heated steering wheel can be adjusted in 2 levels.

When the heated steering wheel is operated, the temperature level is displayed on the screen.

D Automatic mode on/off indicators

When the automatic mode is on, the indicator illuminates on the screen.

E Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be set to automatic mode.

AUTO: Left-hand side seat heater/seat ventilator

AUTO: Heated steering wheel

AUTO: Right-hand side seat heater/seat ventilator

▶ Neck heaters

A can be adjusted by performing the following operations.

Flick operation: Move the pointer to the desired item and flick the touchpad up or down.

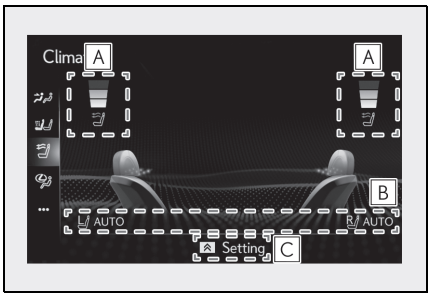
The item can be adjusted by one level.

Trace operation: After selecting the desired item, trace the pad surface.

The item can be adjusted by the amount

that you trace.

Trace operation cannot be used while driving.



A Adjust the neck heater fan speed level

The neck heater can be adjusted in 3 levels.

When the neck heater is operated, the fan speed level is displayed on the screen.

B Automatic mode on/off indicators

When the automatic mode is on, the indicator illuminates on the screen.

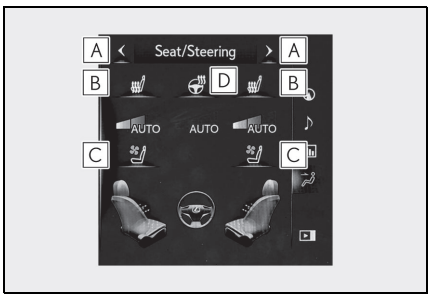
C Sub function menu

When the sub function button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be set to automatic mode.

AUTO: Left-hand side neck heater

AUTO: Right-hand side neck heater

■ Side display



A Display the air conditioning control screen (→P.285)

B Adjust the seat heater temperature level

Each time the switch is selected, the temperature level and level indicator (orange) change as follows:

AUTO → Hi → Mid → Lo → Off

C Adjust the seat ventilator fan speed level

Each time the switch is selected, the fan speed level and level indicator (blue) change as follows:

AUTO → Hi → Mid → Lo → Off

D Adjust the heated steering wheel temperature level

Each time the switch is selected, the temperature level and level indicator change as follows:

AUTO → Hi → Lo → Off

■ **The heated steering wheel, seat heaters and seat ventilators can be used when**

The engine switch is in ON.

■ **Air conditioning system-linked control mode**

When the seat ventilator fan speed level is Hi, the seat ventilator fan speed may become higher according to the fan speed of the air conditioning system.

■ **Customization**

Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode and the automatic mode settings for the seat heaters and ventilators can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

WARNING

■ To prevent overheating and minor burn injuries

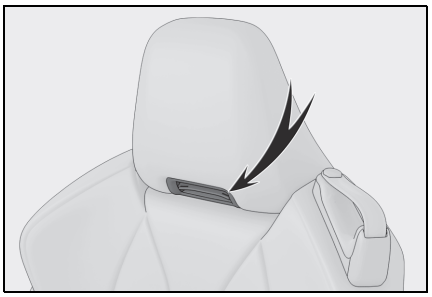
Observe the following precautions when using the seat heaters.

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

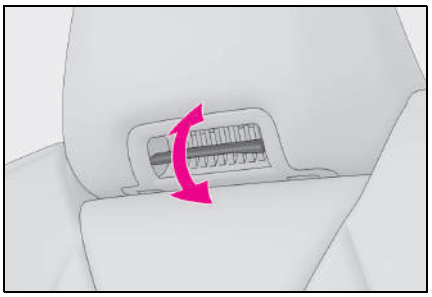
Location and operation of the neck heaters* air outlet

*: If equipped

■ Location of the neck heater air outlet

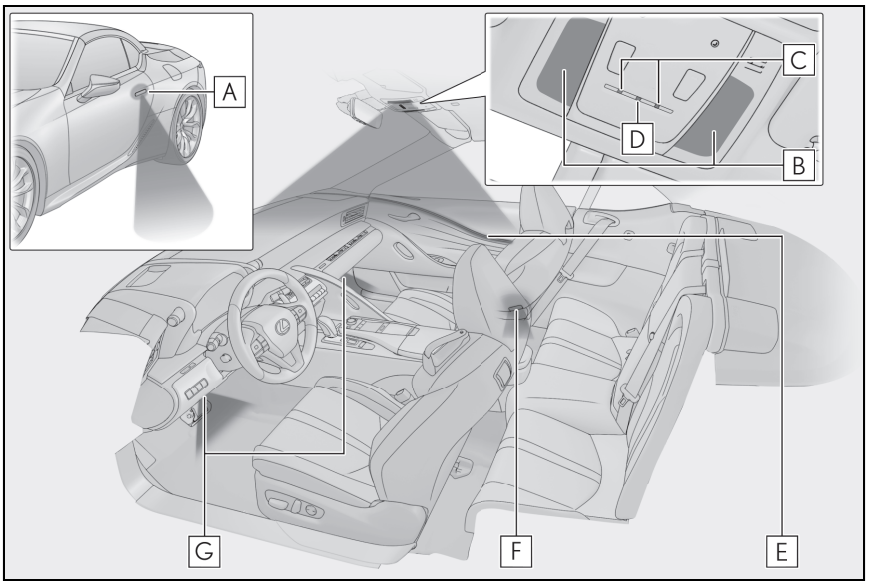


■ Adjusting the air flow direction



Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights



A Outside door handle lights

B Personal lights (→P.296)

C Seat lights (if equipped)

D Shift lever light (if equipped)

E Door trim ornament lights

F Door courtesy lights

G Footwell lights

■ **Personal lights automatic on/off**

- Illuminated entry system: The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.
- If the personal lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **When the personal lights do not respond as normal**

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

■ **The interior lights will turn on automatically when**

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the interior lights will turn on automatically. The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes.

The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured. (The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.420)

NOTICE

■ **Removing light lenses**

Never remove the lens for the personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Operating the personal lights

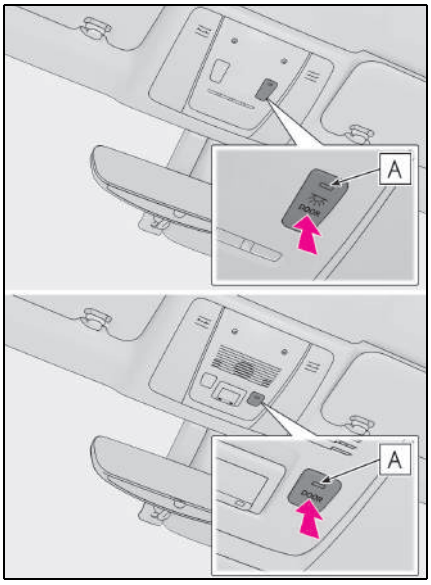
■ **Turning the door position on**

Press the door-linked personal light switch

The lights are turned on and off according to whether the doors are opened/closed.

When the door position is on, the indicator

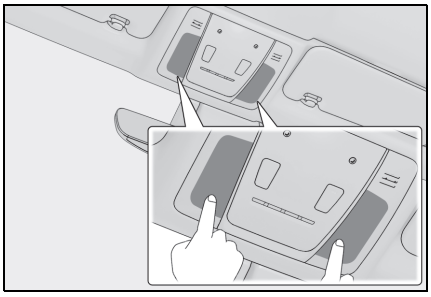
A illuminates.



■ **Turning the lights on/off**

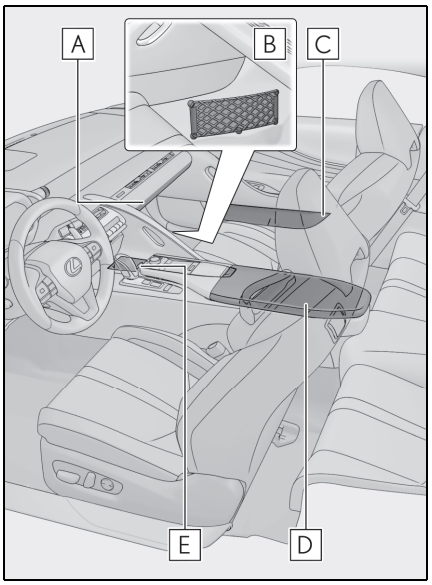
Touch the light

When a door is opened while the door position is on, the lights turn on.



List of storage features

Location of the storage features



A Glove box (→P.297)

B Auxiliary net

C Door pockets

D Console box/auxiliary box (→P.298)

E Cup holder (→P.298)

WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the vehicle

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

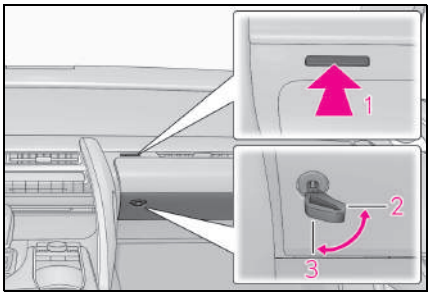
- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

■ When the storage compartments are not in use

When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box



1 Open (press the glove box opener)

2 Unlock with the mechanical key

3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

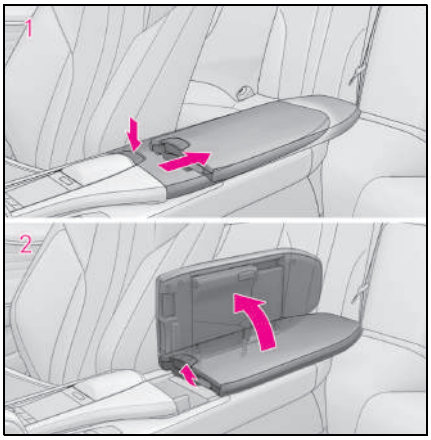
■ Trunk opener main switch

→P.127

■ If the battery is discharged

The glove box cannot be opened as usual. Refer to P.390 to open the glove box.

Console box/auxiliary box



1 Using with half-open: Slide the armrest as far back while pressing the button.

Press the button to close.

2 Using with fully open: Lift the armrest while pulling the knob.

Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Using the auxiliary box

Do not place cups, beverage cans, etc. in the auxiliary box.

WARNING

When closing the console box

Take care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.

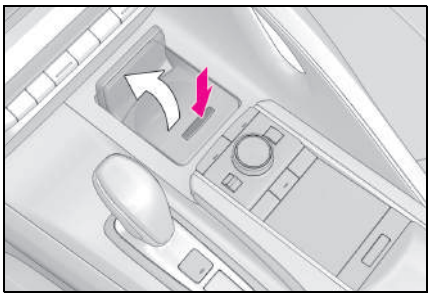
NOTICE

To prevent damage to the console box

- Do not pull the knob while sliding the armrest.
- Do not apply excessive force to the armrest.

Cup holder

To open, press down and release the cup holder lid.



WARNING

Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than a cup or beverage can in the cup holder. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holder.

Other items may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the cup holder and air conditioning control switches

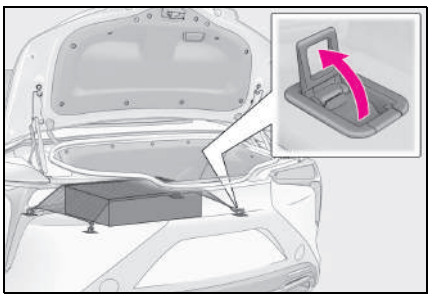
- Do not apply excessive force to the cup holder.
- Take care when placing a tall bottle in the cup holder. When the bottle is taken out or the brakes are suddenly applied, the bottle may hit the air conditioning control switches, causing damage to the switches or parts of the air conditioning system.

Trunk features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hooks when needed.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

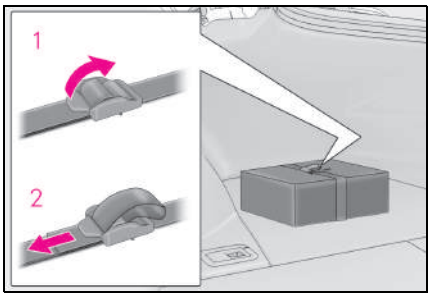


WARNING

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

First-aid kit storage belt

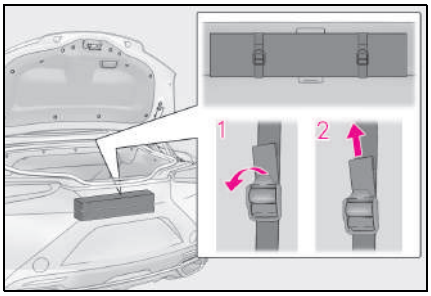


1 Loosen the belt

2 Tighten the belt

Warning reflector storage belt

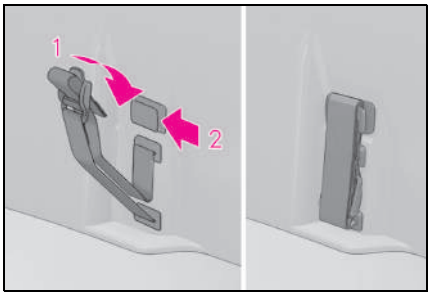
■ Loosening/tightening the belt



1 Loosen the belt

2 Tighten the belt

■ Stowing the belt



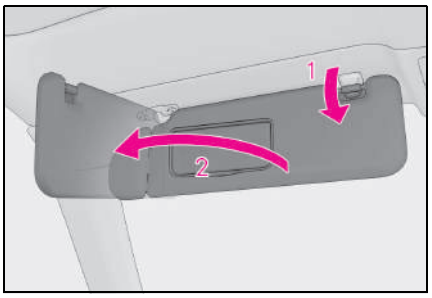
1 Fold the belt

2 Secure the belt with the clip

To prevent damage to the warning reflector storage belt when it is not in use, stow the belt.

Other interior features

Sun visors



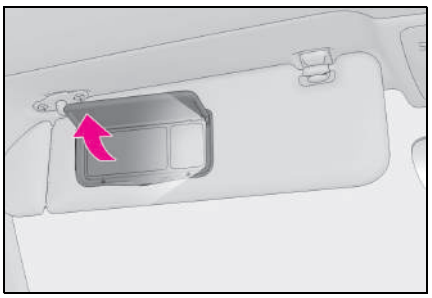
1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

Vanity mirrors

Open the cover.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



NOTICE

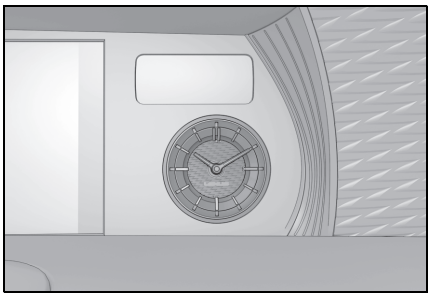
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.

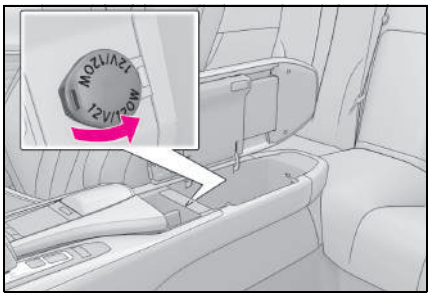
For details, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual"



Power outlet

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

Open the lid.



■ The power outlet can be used when

The engine switch is in ACC or ON.

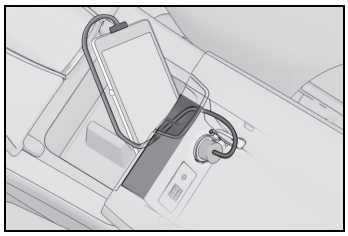
■ When turning the engine switch off

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs.

If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

Using the power outlet

The shape of the console box partition allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is partially closed.



NOTICE

When the power outlet is not in use

To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 304

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 308

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 311

Scheduled maintenance 313

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 324

Hood 325

Positioning a floor jack 326

Engine compartment 327

Battery 333

Tires 335

Replacing the tire 344

Tire inflation pressure 349

Wheels 350

Air conditioning filter 352

Electronic key battery 353

Checking and replacing fuses 355

Light bulbs 359

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions for the parts other than the soft top roof

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Cleaning instructions for the soft top roof

Perform the following procedure to remove any dirt and dust.

▶ Small dirt such as dust

- Brush the soft top roof along the fiber, using a soft brush such as a horsehair brush.
- Use an adhesive roller or compressed air blow gun.

▶ Severe dirt such as a stain

For information regarding cleaning, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Self-restoring coat***

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature.
  The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

*: The soft top roof does not have a self-restoring coat.

■ **Cleaning the areas with metal accents**

Do not use baking soda (sodium bicarbonate) and wax that contains abrasives.

■ **Automatic car washes**

Lexus does not recommend using an automatic car wash.

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface, parts (wheel, etc.) and harm your vehicle's paint.
- When it is necessary to set the engine switch to ACC with the shift position held in N, refer to P.177.

■ **High pressure car washes**

- Do not let water from the high-pressure washer directly hit the soft top roof.
- As water may enter the cabin, do not

bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

■ **Notes for a smart entry & start system**

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.130)

■ **Wheels and wheel ornaments**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
  - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent
  - Do not use hard brushes
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather

■ **Brake caliper coating**

- When using detergent, use neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners, as they will damage the coating.
- Do not use detergent on the brake calipers when they are hot.
- Wash detergent off immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Front side windows water-repellent coating**

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
  - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
  - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Plated portions**

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

- Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.
- To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.

WARNING

■ **When washing the vehicle**

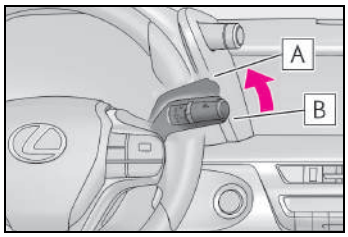
Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

WARNING

When cleaning the windshield

Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

As exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot, do not touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar, pollen or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

To prevent damage or deterioration of the soft top roof

- Immediately remove any snow that has accumulated on the soft top roof or luggage cover.
- If bird droppings etc. are present on the soft top roof, immediately remove it.

NOTICE

- When parking the vehicle, avoid direct sunlight as much as possible.
- If parking the vehicle in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, ensure that there is adequate ventilation.
- Do not use wax.
- Do not open the soft top roof with dirt or snow adhered.

■ Cleaning the soft top roof

Do not strongly press a soft brush such as a horsehair brush or an adhesive roller to the soft top roof. Doing so may cause damage to the soft top roof.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
  Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to the off position.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using high-pressure car wash

- When washing the vehicle, do not let water from the high-pressure washer directly hit the camera, the area around the camera or inside of the outside door handles. Due to the shock from high-pressure water, it is possible that the device may not operate normally.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.
- Do not wash the underside of the vehicle using a high pressure car washer.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions for the interior parts other than the soft top roof

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
  Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Cleaning instructions for the interior parts of the soft top roof

▶ Small dirt such as dust

Use a compressed air blow gun to remove dust.

▶ Severe dirt such as a stain

Dampen a small amount of water in a cloth similar in material and color to the soft top roof fiber, and wipe off the dirt. And then allow the soft top roof to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

■ When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc.

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

■ CFRP (Carbon Fiber Reinforced Plastic) parts (if equipped)

CFRP is used for the scuff plates. When cleaning the scuff plates, remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois, and then wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

⚠ WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.42)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

WARNING

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

● Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:

- Other than the seats and soft top roof: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
- Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Soft top roof: Solutions

● Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

● Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.

● Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.

● Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ When cleaning the soft top roof

Do not excessively use water. Doing so may cause a stain on the soft top roof.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.198)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

● Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.

● Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

■ Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal for

the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long periods of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.333)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.

Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.

- Where to go for maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

■ Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required (for Korea)

After the required maintenance is performed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the message.
To reset the data, follow the procedure described below:

1. Press ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches and select ⚙.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings". Then press "OK".
3. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Scheduled Maintenance". Then press "OK".

4 Select "Yes" and press "OK".

A message will be displayed when the reset procedure has been completed.



Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in this section.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

■ **Does your vehicle need repairs?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.97)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition. (See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

A. Road Conditions 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow. 2. Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	B. Driving Conditions 1. Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.) 2. Repeated short trips of less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.) 3. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional / private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use. 4. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.

Maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS											
1	Valve clearance									I	96
2	Drive belts			I		I		I		I	24
3	Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
4	Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
5	Cooling and heater system <<See note 1.>>					I				I	24
6	Engine coolant <<See note 2.>>					I				I	-
7	Exhaust pipes and mountings			I		I		I		I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM											
8	Spark plugs		Replace every 100000 km (60000 miles).								-
9	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS											
10	Fuel filter <<See note 3.>>									R	96
11	Valve mechanism <<See note 4 and 5.>>		Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								
12	Fuel injection system <<See notes 4 and 6.>>		Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								
13	Air cleaner filter			I		R		I		R	I: 24 R: 48
14	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve <<See note 1.>>					I				I	24
15	Charcoal canister					I				I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY											
16	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 7.>>		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
17	Brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)			I		I		I		I	12
18	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
19	Brake fluid		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I: 6 R: 24
20	Brake pipes and hoses			I		I		I		I	12
21	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box			I		I		I		I	12
22	Drive shaft boots			I		I		I		I	24
23	Suspension ball joint and dust cover			I		I		I		I	12
24	Automatic transmission fluid					I				I	24
25	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections					I				I	24
26	Rear differential oil			I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
27	Front and rear suspension			I		I		I		I	12
28	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
29	Lights, horns, wipers and washer		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
30	Air conditioning filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12

NOTE:

1. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.

2. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (50000 miles).

3. Including the filter in fuel tank.

4. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.

5. For Philippines only.

6. For Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Guatemala, Panama, Curacao, Peru, Bahrain, Saudi Arabia, and Brunei only.

7. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of suspension ball joint and dust cover	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Replacement of air conditioner filter	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-2: Repeated short trips of less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

Maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS									
1	Valve clearance							I	72
2	Drive belts		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	MONTHS
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
3	Engine oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
4	Engine oil filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
5	Cooling and heater system			I		I		I	24
6	Engine coolant <<See note 1.>>			I		I		I	-
7	Exhaust pipes and mountings		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM									
8	Spark plugs <<See note 2.>>							R	-
9	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS									
10	Fuel filter <<See note 3.>>						R		96
11	Air cleaner filter		I	I	I	R	I	I	I: 24 R: 48
12	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve			I		I		I	24
13	Charcoal canister				I			I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY									
14	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 4.>>			I		I		I	24
15	Brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)			I		I		I	24
16	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
17	Brake fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 24
18	Brake pipes and hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
19	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
20	Drive shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	24
21	Suspension ball joint and dust cover		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	MONTHS
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
22	Automatic transmission fluid				I			I	36
23	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections				I			I	36
24	Rear differential oil		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
25	Front and rear suspension		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
26	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
27	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
28	Air conditioning filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12

NOTE:

1. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (50000 miles).

2. It is possible to replace every 100000 km (60000 miles).

3. Including the filter in fuel tank.

4. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see “Maintenance schedule requirements”.)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of suspension ball joint and dust cover	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months R: Every 60000 km (36000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of air conditioning filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-2: Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake linings and drums (including parking brake linings and drums)	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.333)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine coolant level (→P.330)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.328)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.355)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.359)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original
Radiator and condenser (→P.331)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.349)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.331)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.

WARNING

- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in ON, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.331)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

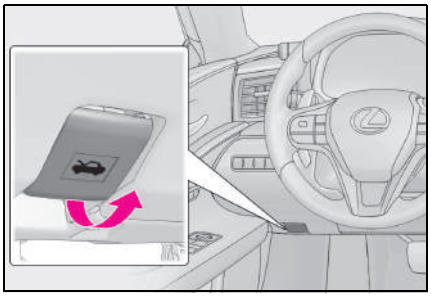
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Hood

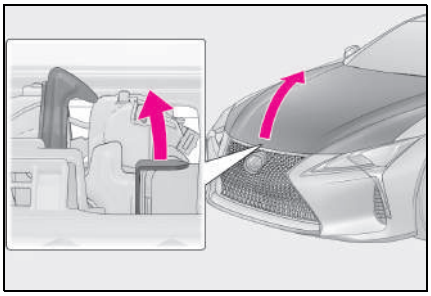
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

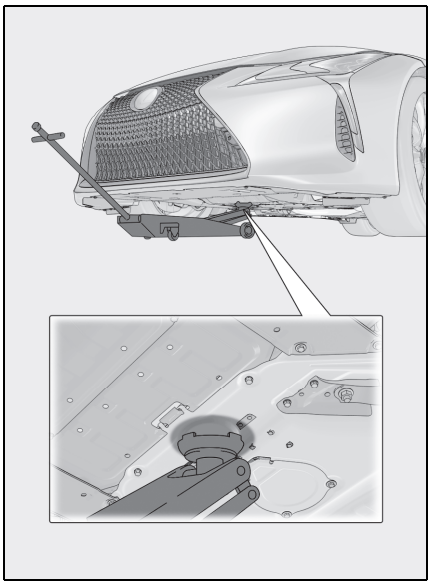
Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

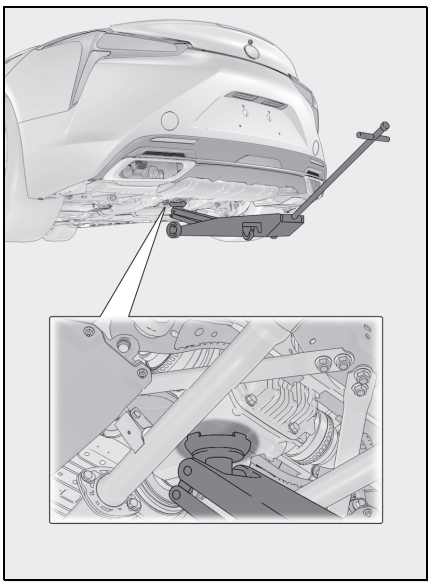
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Location of the jack point

■ Front

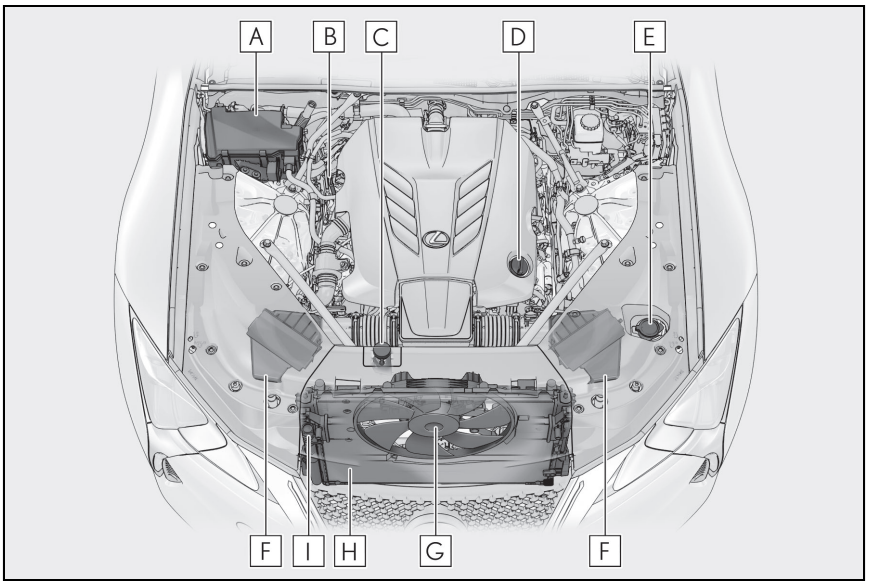


■ Rear



Engine compartment

Components



A Fuse box (→P.355)

B Engine oil level dipstick (→P.328)

C Engine coolant reservoir (→P.330)

D Engine oil filler cap (→P.329)

E Washer fluid tank (→P.331)

F Air cleaners (→P.332)

G Electric cooling fan

H Condenser (→P.331)

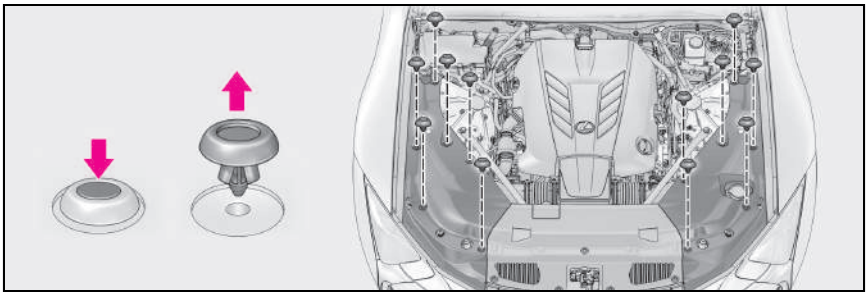
I Radiator (→P.331)

For right-hand drive vehicles:
The fuse box is located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

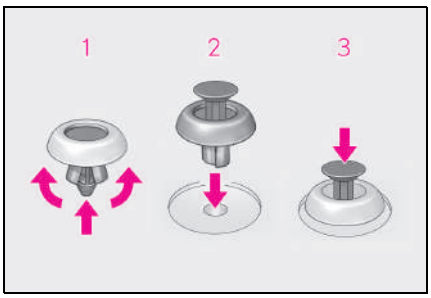
Battery
→P.333

Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment cover



■ Installing the clips



1 Push up center portion
2 Insert
3 Press

WARNING

■ Checking the engine compartment cover after installation

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

Checking and adding the engine oil

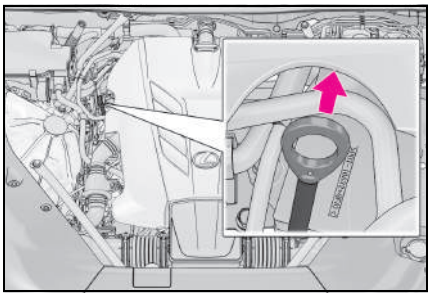
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

1 Park the vehicle on level ground.

After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

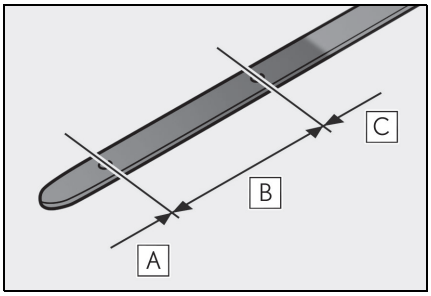
2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



A Low

B Normal

C Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

■ **Checking the engine oil type and preparing the items needed**

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

● Engine oil selection

→P.412

● Oil quantity (Low → Full)

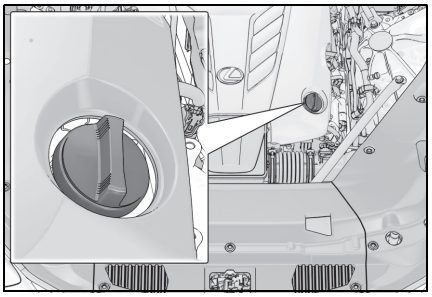
1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)

● Item

Clean funnel

■ **Adding engine oil**

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

WARNING

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

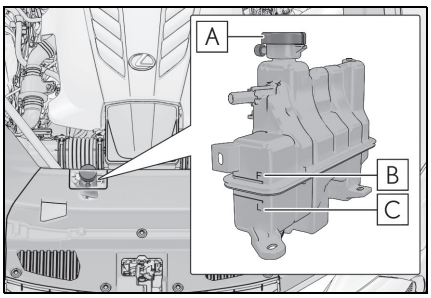
■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “F” and “L” lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ **Engine coolant reservoir**



A Reservoir cap

B “F” line

C “L” line

If the level is on or below the “L” line, add coolant up to the “F” line. (→P.404)

■ **Coolant selection**

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or the coolant inlet cap. (→P.406)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

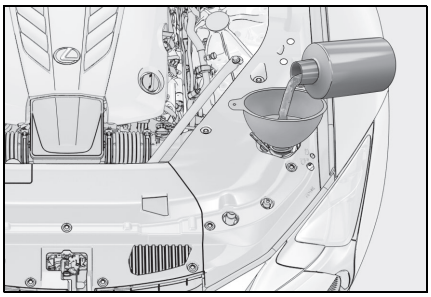
WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator and condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Checking and adding the washer fluid

If any washer does not work or "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" is shown on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ **When adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ **Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid**

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ **Diluting washer fluid**

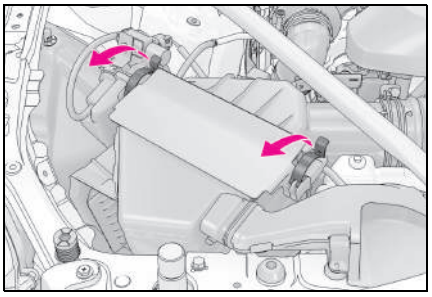
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Checking the air cleaner filter

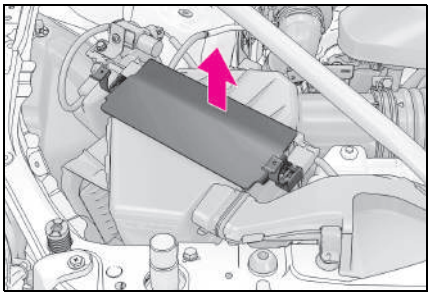
Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

1 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P.328)

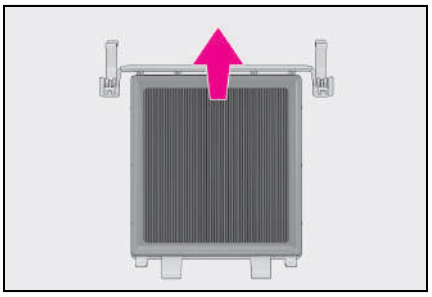
2 Release the clips.



3 Lift the cover.



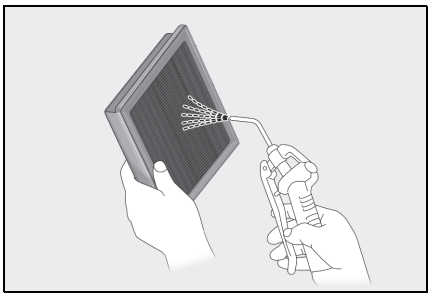
4 Take out the air cleaner filter.



5 Inspect the outer surface of the filter.

If it is extremely dirty: Replace the filter.

If the filter is only moderately dusty: Blow dust out of the filter using compressed air from the side without dust shown in the illustration.



WARNING

■ To prevent inhaling dust

Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

NOTICE

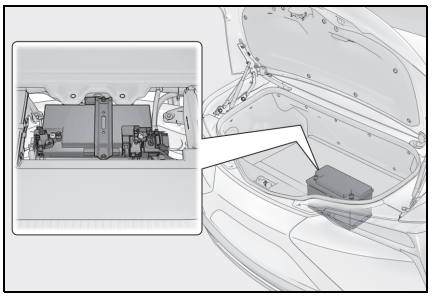
■ To prevent damaging the engine

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.
- When removing the air cleaner filter, do not hit or drop it, as it may contain dust, sand. etc.

Battery

Location

The battery is located in the trunk.



Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the battery

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACC mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts at all methods above, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

Chemicals in the battery

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

How to recharge the battery

Recharge at a current of 5 A or less and make sure that the recharging period does not exceed a total of 12 hours.

WARNING

■ **Emergency measures regarding electrolyte**

● If electrolyte gets in your eyes

Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.

● If electrolyte gets on your skin

Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

● If electrolyte gets on your clothes

It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.

● If you accidentally swallow electrolyte

Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

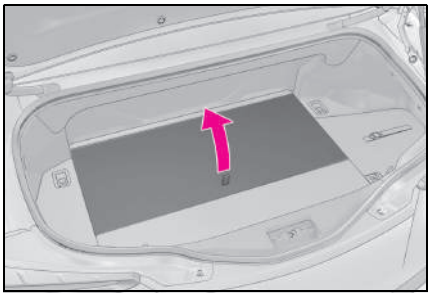
NOTICE

■ **When recharging the battery**

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

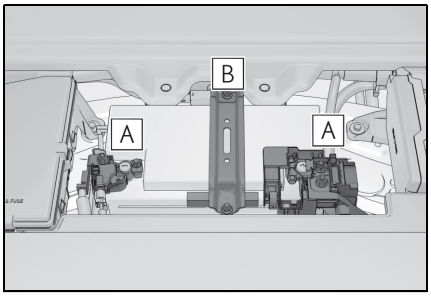
Removing the battery cover

Pull the strap upwards to lift up the luggage mat.



Exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

Caution symbols

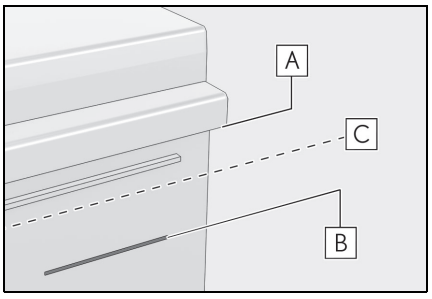
The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Shield eyes

	Keep away from children
	Battery acid
	Note operating instructions
	Explosive gas

Checking the battery fluid

Check that the level is upper than the center between the bottom of the battery lid and "LOWER LEVEL" line.



A Bottom of the battery lid

B "LOWER LEVEL" line

C Center of A and B

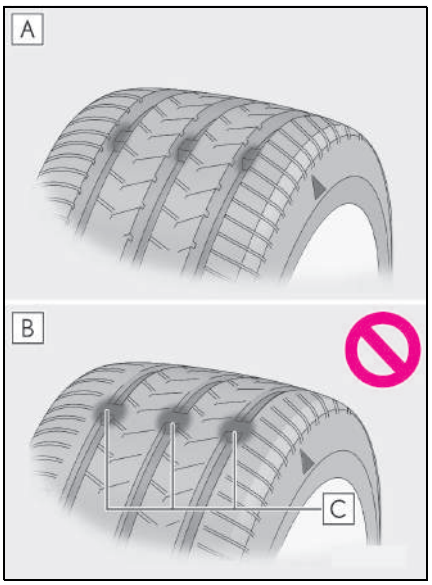
If the fluid level is below C, replace the battery.

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ Low profile tires (21-inch tires)

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ Low profile tires (21-inch tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

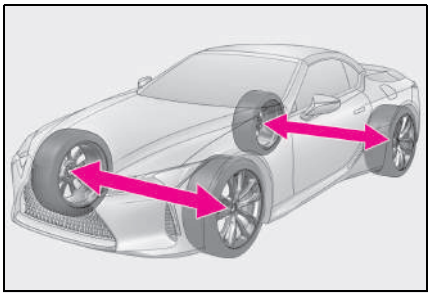
- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

When rotating the tires

Make sure that the engine switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in ON, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to off and then to ON, or initialize the tire pressure warning system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

Run-flat tires

When run-flat tires are installed, the vehicle can be driven for a maximum of 160 km (100 miles) at a speed below 80 km/h (50 mph) after any tire goes flat. (However, the vehicle speed may not increase to near 80 km/h [50 mph] depending on weather or driving conditions.)

A run-flat tire has a mark on the sidewall.

Make sure to replace the flat tire before the vehicle has been driven for near 160 km (100 miles). Also, do not use a repaired tire.

Run-flat tires

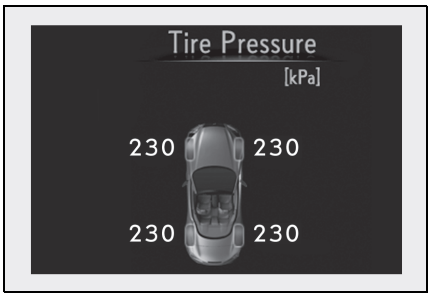
- The run-flat tires are for only this vehicle. Do not use the tires on other vehicles.
- Do not mix run-flat tires and normal tires.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used, it may be impossible to sufficiently demonstrate the performance of run-flat tires.

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P.377)
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.100)

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains etc. are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheels without tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ Certification for tire pressure warning system

▶ For vehicles sold in Curacao, Costa Rica, Panama and Dominican Republic

FCC ID: PAXPMVC015

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Indonesia

47953/SDPPI/2016
3505

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore

Complies With
IMDA Standards
DA101418

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Korea

Identification Number: MSIP-CRM-PCX-PMV-C215
Equipment Name (Model Number): 특정소출력무선기기(PMV-C215)
Manufactured date:See product
Applicant: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Manufacturer: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Country of Origin: Japan

▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER35452/14
DEALER No:
DA0063612/11

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/249

▶ For vehicles sold in Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES
H-17757

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.

ICASA TA-2014/1916 APPROVED

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and

the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. (→P.343)

■ **When replacing the tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When rotating the tires.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed when changing traveling speed.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures)
- After registering the ID codes. (→P.343)

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ **How to initialize the tire pressure warning system**

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level.

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the engine switch to ON.

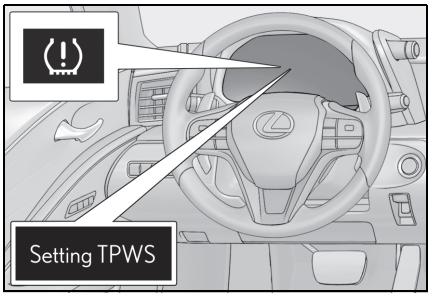
4 Press < or > of the meter control switches and select .

5 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select “Vehicle Settings”, and then press “OK”.

6 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select “TPWS SET”, and then press “OK”.

7 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select “Set tire pressure”, and then press and hold “OK” until the tire pressure warning light starts blinking.

A message is displayed on the multi-information display. Also, "--" is displayed for inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display while the tire pressure warning system determines the position.



8 Drive the vehicle at approximately 40 km/h (25mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When initialization is complete, the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Depending on the vehicle and driving conditions, initialization may take up to approximately 1 hour to complete.

■ **The initialization operation**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to manually restart the initialization again, as initialization will restart automatically the next time the engine switch is turned to ON.
- If you accidentally perform initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.
- While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization may take longer to complete if the vehicle is driven on an unpaved road. When performing initialization, drive on a paved road if possible. Depending on the driving environment and condition of the tires, initialization will be completed in approximately 10 to 30 minutes. If initialization is not complete after driving approximately 10 to 30 minutes, continue driving for a while. If the inflation of each tire is not displayed after driving for approximately 1 hour, perform the following procedure.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes. Then drive straight (with occasional left and right turns) at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

However, in the following situations, the tire inflation pressure will not be recorded and the system will not operate properly. Perform initialization again.

- When performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times. (Initialization will not occur while driving)
- After performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

If the inflation pressure of each tire is still not displayed, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When registering ID codes**

- Initialize the tire pressure warning system after ID code registration. Initialization is disabled if the system was initialized before registration.
- After ID code registration, the tires are hot by driving. Initialize the tire pressure warning system after the tires become cold.

WARNING

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code.

When registering the ID codes, perform the following procedure.

1 Turn the engine switch to ON.

2 Press < or > of the meter control switches and select .

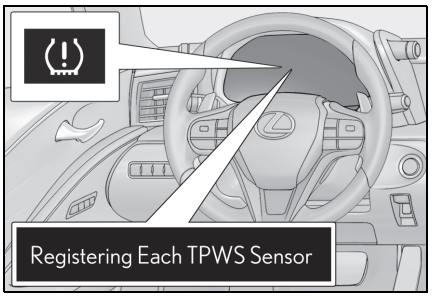
3 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", and then press "OK".

4 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select "TPWS SET", and then press "OK".

5 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches and select "Change wheel set", and then press and hold "OK" until the tire pressure warning light starts blinking.

The change wheel set mode is activated and registration is started.

A message is displayed on the multi-information display, and "--" is displayed for inflation pressure of each tire. Then, the tire pressure warning light blinks rapidly for approximately 1 minute and stays on.



6 Drive the vehicle at 40 km/h (25mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When registration is completed, the tire pressure warning light will go off and the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The time elapsed before registration is completed differs according to the driving condition and environment.

■ Canceling the change wheel set mode

- If turning the engine switch off when in the change wheel set mode before driving, the change wheel set mode is canceled.
- After driving when in the change wheel set mode, the change wheel set mode cannot be canceled. To cancel the mode, perform the procedure for ID code registration again and turn the engine switch off before driving.
- If the change wheel set mode is canceled, the ID codes that have already been registered are communicated. When communication is finished, the tire pressure warning light will turn off.

■ When ID code registration may not operate properly

- Do not move the vehicle backward during registration. Registration is started again from the beginning and it may take

longer than usual.

- When another vehicle is running the side of the vehicle such as in heavy traffic, it may take longer to detect the vehicle's tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.
- If tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are in the vehicle, the ID codes may not be registered.

If registration takes long time, perform the procedure for ID code registration again after parking the vehicle for 20 minutes.

If the ID codes cannot be registered even when performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

Replacing the tire

When raising your vehicle with a jack, position the jack correctly.

Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

If necessary tire replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.

Before jacking up the vehicle

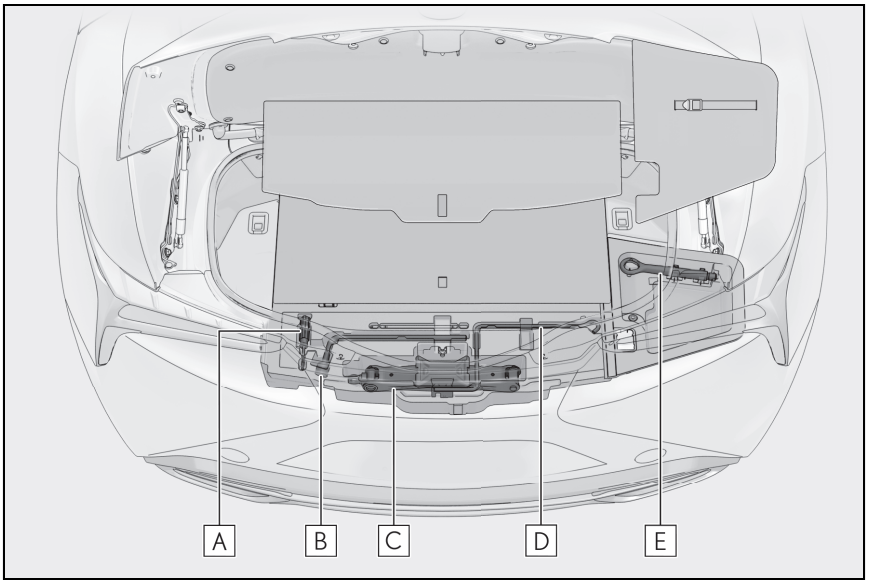
- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift position to P.
- Turn off the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (→P.88)
- Stop the engine.

■ Tools (except for Indonesia and Qatar)

As your vehicle is equipped with run-flat tires, the following tools for replacing a tire are not included with your vehicle. They can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

- Wheel nut wrench
- Jack
- Jack handle

Location of the tools



A Screwdriver

B Wheel nut wrench*

C Jack*

D Jack handle*

E Towing eyelet

*: Except for Indonesia and Qatar: They can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions. Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

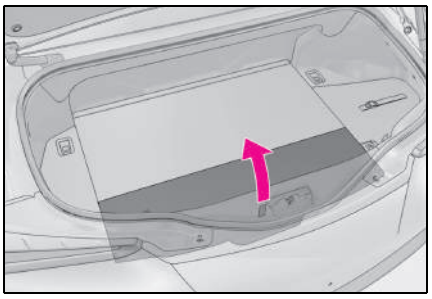
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires.
- For Indonesia and Qatar: Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Except for Indonesia and Qatar: Do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.

WARNING

- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

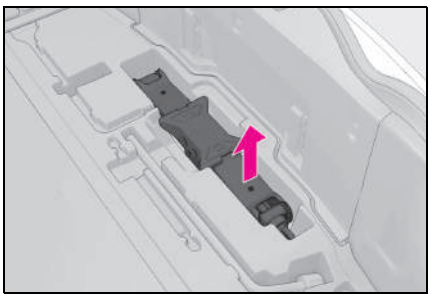
Taking out the jack (if equipped)

1 Pull the strap up and remove the rear luggage mat.



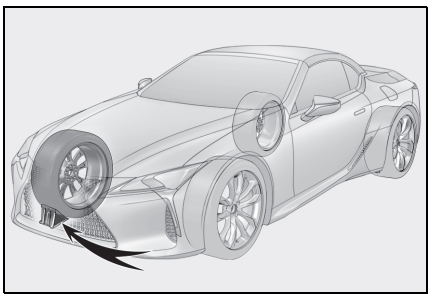
2 Take out the jack.

Remove the jack handle, and then take out the jack.



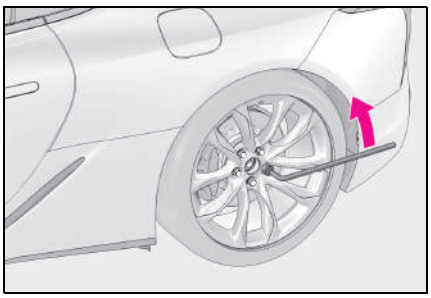
Removing a tire

1 Chock the tires.



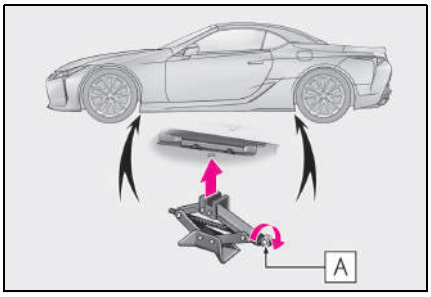
Tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

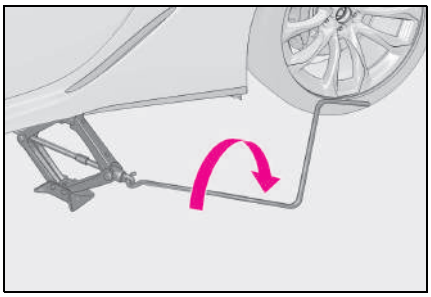


3 Turn the tire jack portion [A] by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

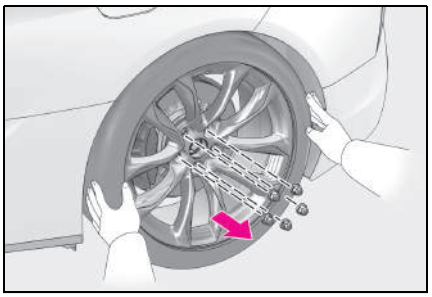


4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



WARNING

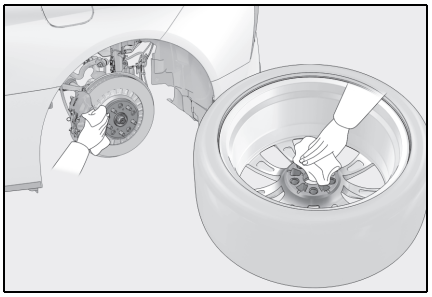
■ Replacing a tire

Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

Installing the tire

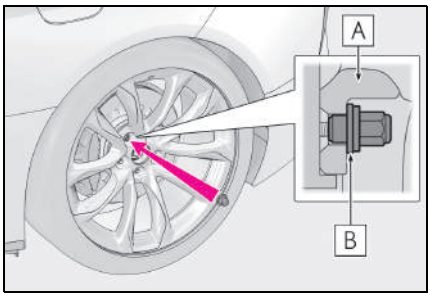
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



2 Install the tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

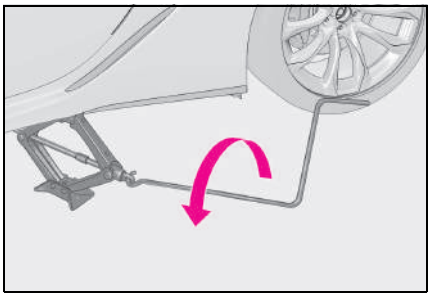
Turn the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.



A Disc wheel

B Washer

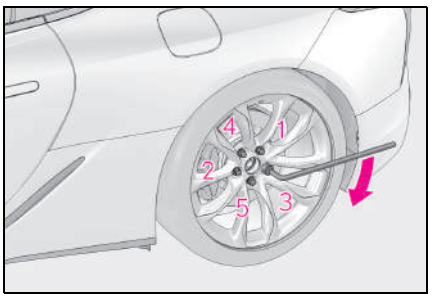
3 Lower the vehicle.



4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:

140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)



5 Stow all the tools.

WARNING

■ When installing the tire

Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **After using the tools**

Before driving, make sure all the tools are stored securely in place. Failure to do so may cause injury in case of a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

→P.341

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

■ **Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure**

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.340)

WARNING

■ **When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ **Use of defective wheels prohibited**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels. Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

■ **Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

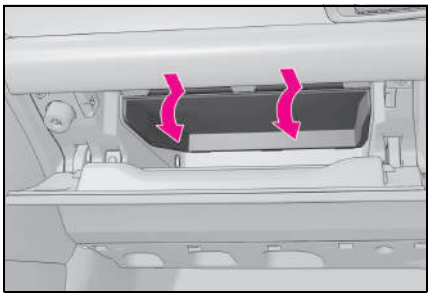
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removing the air conditioning filter

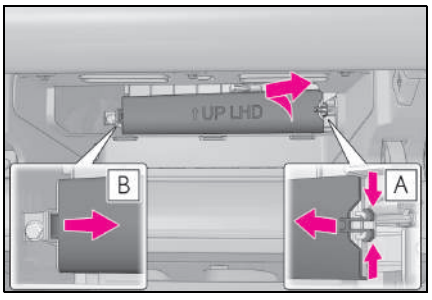
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box.

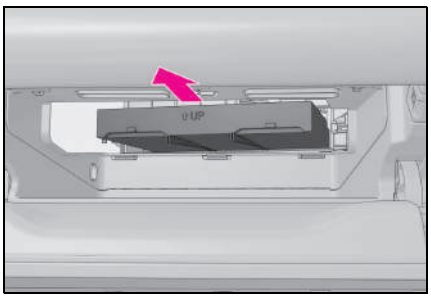
3 Remove the panel.



4 Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.

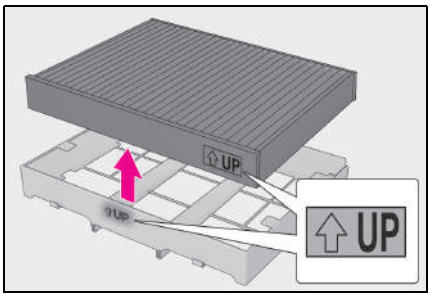


5 Remove the filter case.



6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "⇧UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



■ **Checking interval**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (→P.313)

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ **Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function**

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period.

When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning

filter.

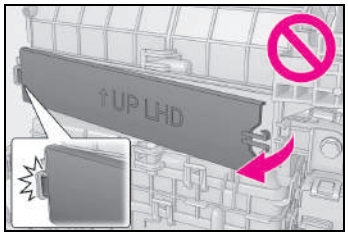
NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed. Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

■ To prevent damage to the filter cover

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

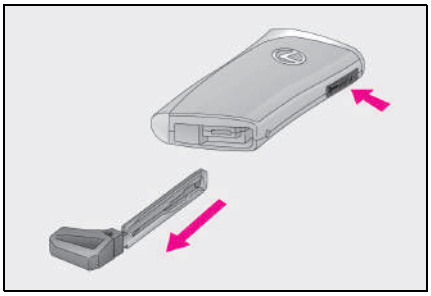
- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

■ Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

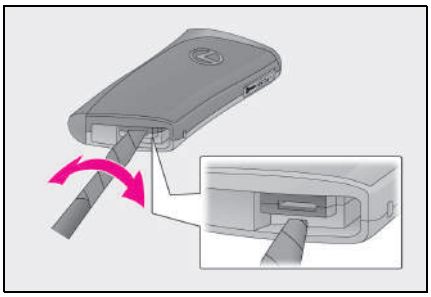
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

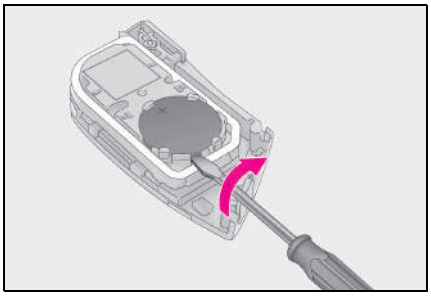
To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



3 Remove the depleted battery using a small flathead screwdriver.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.





WARNING

■ Battery precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- A coin battery or button battery is used in the electronic key. If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.
- If the cover cannot be firmly closed, stop using the electronic key and stow the key in the place where children cannot reach, and then contact your Lexus dealer.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

WARNING

■ **To prevent battery explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas**

- Replace the battery with a new battery of the same type. If a wrong type of battery is used, it may explode.
- Do not expose batteries to extremely low pressure due to high altitude or extremely high temperatures.
- Do not burn, break or cut a battery.

NOTICE

■ **When replacing the battery**

Use a screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.

Moisture may cause the battery to rust.

- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

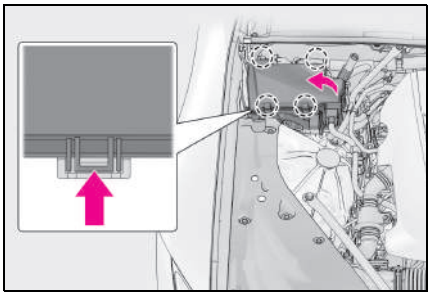
Checking and replacing fuses

1 Turn the engine switch off.

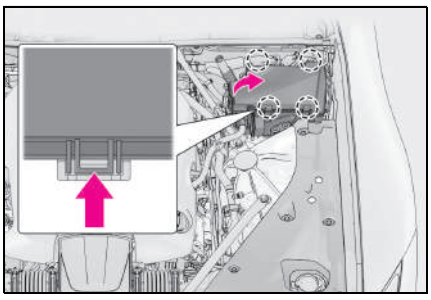
2 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment:

Left-hand drive vehicles:
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

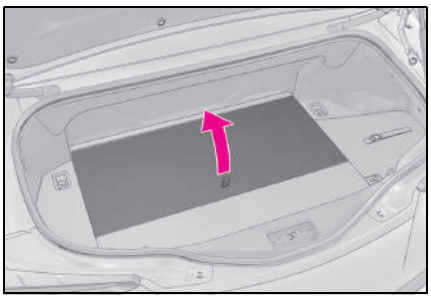


Right-hand drive vehicles:
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

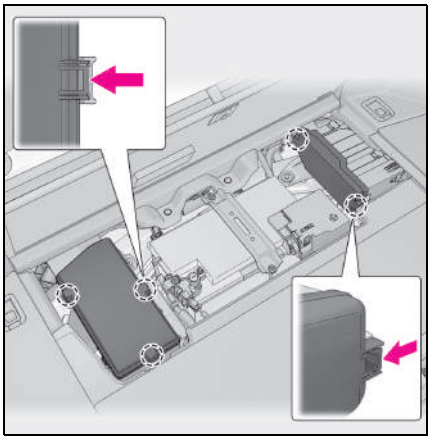


▶ Trunk

Remove the luggage mat.



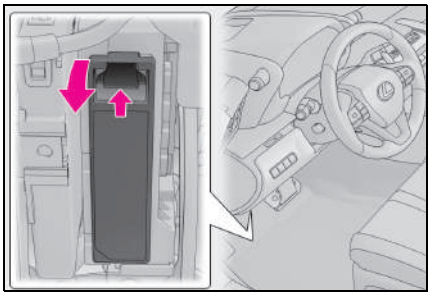
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Driver's side instrument panel

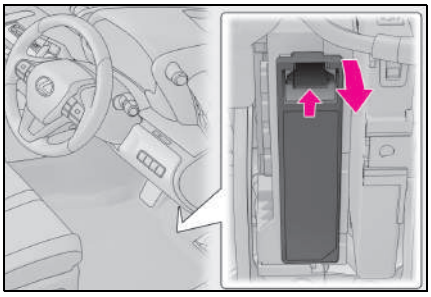
Left-hand drive vehicles:
Push the tab in and remove the lid.

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



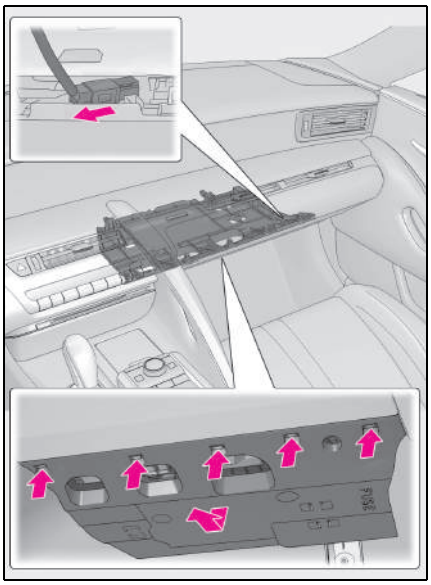
Right-hand drive vehicles:
Push the tab in and remove the lid.

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



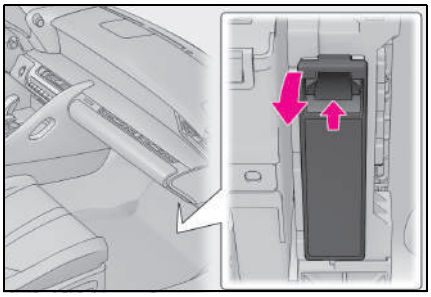
▶ Front passenger's side instrument panel

Left-hand drive vehicles:
Remove the cover, and then remove the footwell light connector.

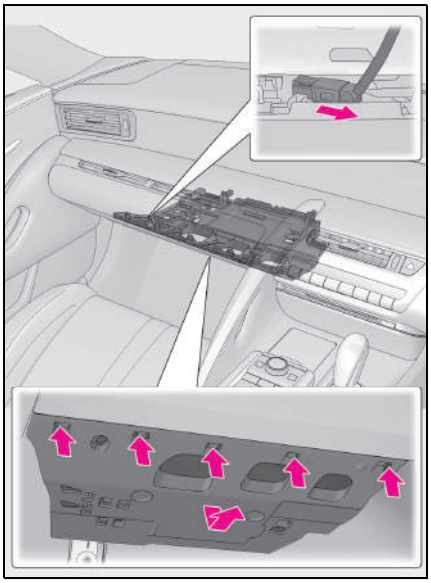


Push the tab in and remove the lid.

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.

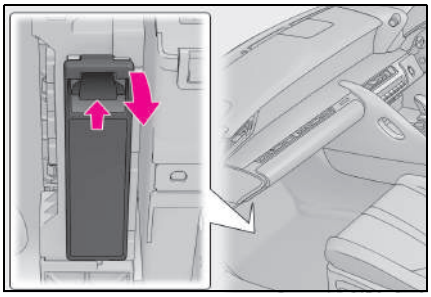


Right-hand drive vehicles:
Remove the cover, and then remove the footwell light connector.



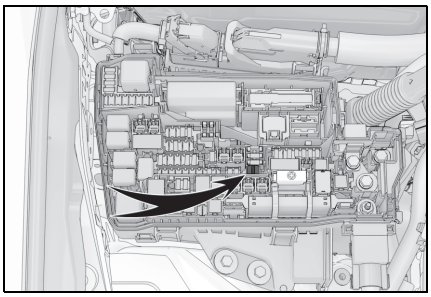
Push the tab in and remove the lid.

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.

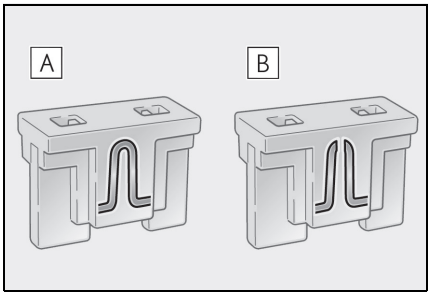


4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

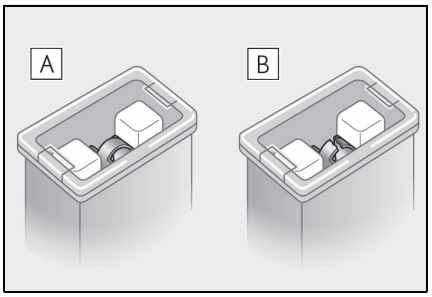
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

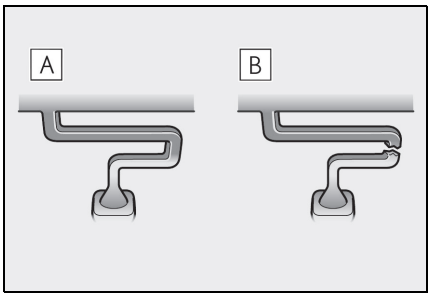
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

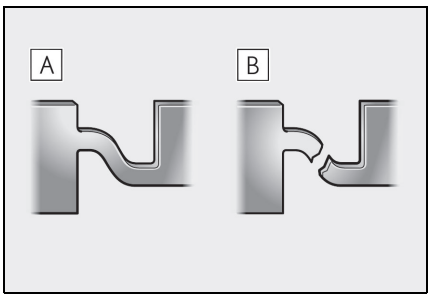
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.359)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

WARNING

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

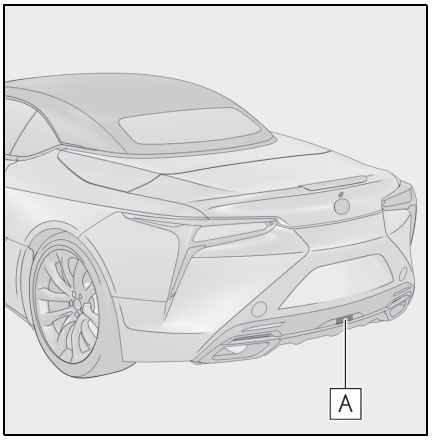
■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulb by yourself. Before replacing, check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.

Bulb location



A Rear fog light

■ **Bulbs that need to be replaced by your Lexus dealer**

- Headlights
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Cornering lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Rear turn signal lights
- Back-up lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

■ **LED lights**

The lights other than the rear fog light each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

■ **Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens**

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

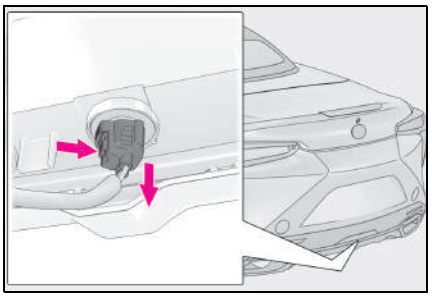
■ **When replacing light bulbs**

→P.358

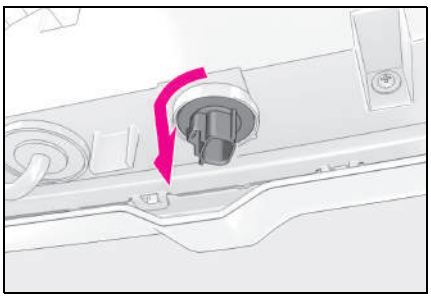
Replacing light bulb

■ **Rear fog light**

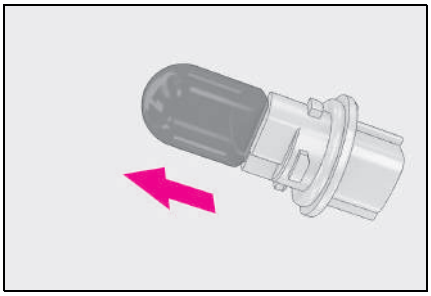
1 Disconnect the connector.



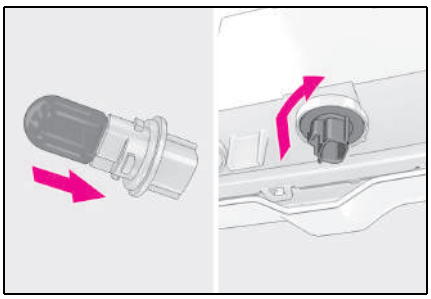
2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



3 Remove the light bulb.

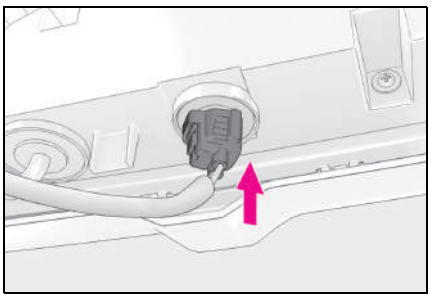


4 Install a new light bulb then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning the bulb base clockwise.



5 Reconnect the connector.

After reconnecting the connector, turn on the rear fog light to visually check that there is no light leaking from the bulb base.



WARNING

■ Replacing light bulb

- Turn off the light. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the light.
  The bulb become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulb and any parts used to secure it. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the light unit. This may damage the light or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ To prevent damage or fire

- Make sure bulb is fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 362

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 363

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 365

If you think something is wrong 369

Fuel pump shut off system 370

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 371

If a warning message is displayed 380

If you have a flat tire 384

If the engine will not start 385

If you lose your keys 386

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 387

If the electronic key does not operate properly 387

If the battery is discharged 389

If the soft top roof cannot be closed 396

If your vehicle overheats 404

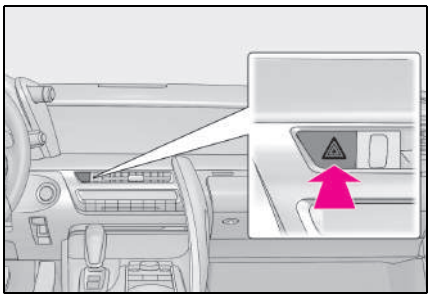
If the vehicle becomes stuck 406

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch to flash all of the turn signal lights.
To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically. The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift position to N.

▶ If the shift position is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

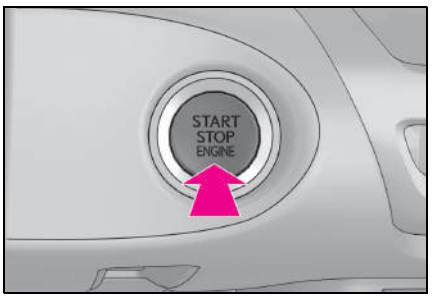
4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift position cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water

In the event the vehicle is submerged in water, remain calm and perform the following.

- Remove the seat belt first.
- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the window can not be opened using the power window switch, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle, and then open the door and exit the vehicle.

WARNING

■ Using an emergency hammer* for emergency escape

The front side windows and rear side windows, as well as the rear window can be shattered by an emergency hammer* used for emergency escape.

However, an emergency hammer can not shatter the windshield as it is laminated glass.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

WARNING

■ Escaping the vehicle from the window

There are cases where escaping the vehicle from the window is not possible due to seating position, passenger body type, etc.

When using an emergency hammer, consider your seat location and the size of the window opening to ensure that the opening is accessible and large enough to escape.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

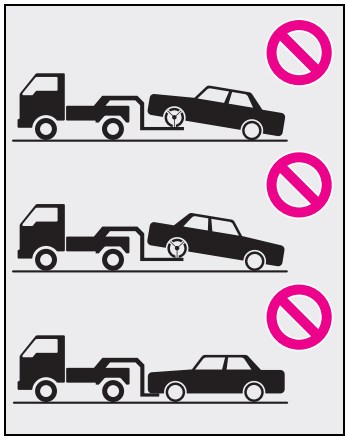
If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged or an accident may occur due to a change in direction of the vehicle.



■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the engine switch off. This may lead to an accident as the rear wheels will be locked by the parking lock. Also, there is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is OFF. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

Situations when it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle

In the following situations, it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle using cables or chains, as the rear wheels may be locked due to the parking lock. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service.

- There is a malfunction in the shift control system. (→P.172, 382)
- There is a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.83)
- There is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system. (→P.387)
- The battery is discharged. (→P.389)

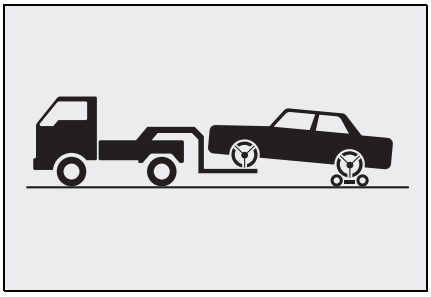
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

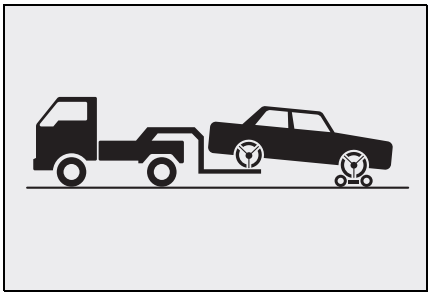
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear

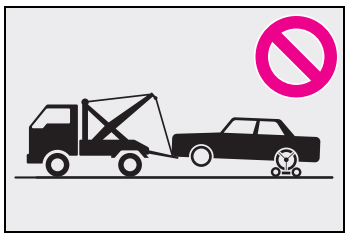


Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

NOTICE

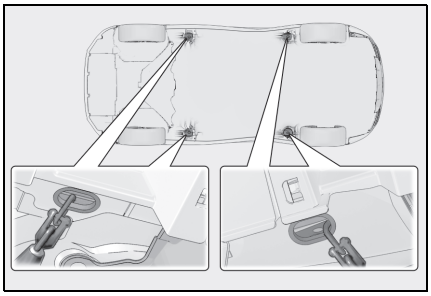
■ Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

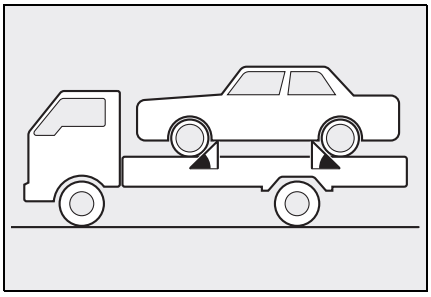


Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.



If you cannot tie down the vehicle using the method above, use tire strapping belts.

NOTICE

■ Using a flatbed truck

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

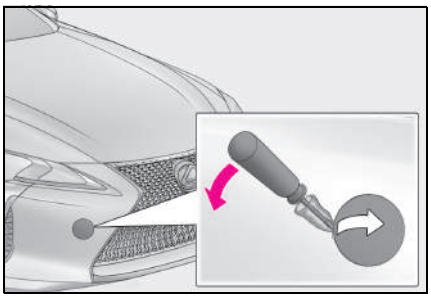
Emergency towing procedure

To have your vehicle towed by another vehicle, the towing eyelet must be installed to your vehicle. Install the towing eyelet using the following procedure.

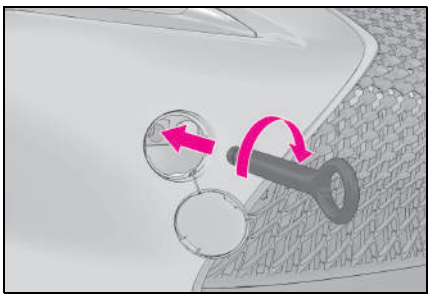
1 Take out the screwdriver and the towing eyelet. (→P.345)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

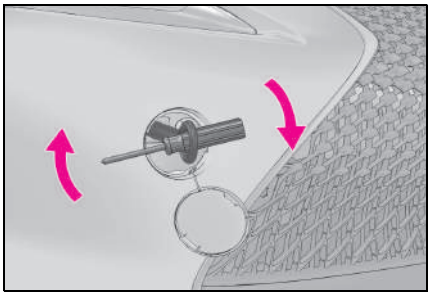
To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using the screwdriver, a wheel nut wrench (if equipped) or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to ON.

7 Shift the shift position to N and release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.182)

■ **While towing**

If the engine is not running the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Wheel nut wrench**

Except for Indonesia and Qatar: wheel nut wrench can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

For Indonesia and Qatar: wheel nut wrench is installed in trunk. (→P.345)

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle. (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACC or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.** ● Indicates that the brake pads are worn out (only the right-side pads can be detected) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.**

■ Charging system warning light*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ **Low engine oil pressure warning light (warning buzzer)***

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ **Malfunction indicator lamp (warning buzzer)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The emission control system; ● The electronic engine control system; ● The electronic throttle control system; ● The electronic automatic transmission control system; or ● The Exhaust Gas Filter system* → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

*: If equipped

■ **SRS warning light**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ **ABS warning light (warning buzzer)**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red) or  (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ PCS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes or illuminates) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** (→P.201, 380) If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → P.210

■ LKA indicator*/LDA indicator*

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (orange) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) **→ When "Lane Keeping Assist Unavailable" or "Lane Departure Alert Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display, turn the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system off, drive the vehicle for a short time, and then turn the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system back on. (→P.214, 222)** **When a message other than above is displayed, follow the instructions displayed in the message.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Slip indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system; ● The TRC (Traction Control) system; or ● The hill-start assist control system **→ Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** The light will flash when the VSC, TRC or ABS system is operating.

■ Brake Override System warning light/Drive-Start Control warning light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer sounds): Indicates a malfunction in the Brake Override System or Drive-Start Control → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** Indicates that the shift position was changed while depressing the accelerator pedal and Drive-Start Control was operated → **Momentarily release the accelerator pedal.** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer does not sound): Indicates that the accelerator and brake pedals are being depressed simultaneously → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Brake hold operated indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Brake system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronically controlled brake system ● The parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ **Low fuel level warning light**

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 12.1L [3.2 gal., 2.7 Imp.gal.] or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

■ **Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)**[*1]

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

[*1]: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

▶ For GCC countries[*2], Jordan and Lebanon

Driver's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to ON, the buzzer sounds. If the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

Front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

▶ Except for GCC countries[*2], Jordan and Lebanon

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

[*2]: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (warning buzzer*1)*2

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*1: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time, after the seat belt is fastened and unfastened and the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*2: This light illuminates on the center panel.

■ Master warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.380

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as ● Natural causes (→P.378) ● Flat tire (→P.384) → **Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system → **Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.**

■ High coolant temperature warning light (warning buzzer)*

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature increases → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method. (→P.404)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on a front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

For some models, the malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ **Tire pressure warning light**

When a malfunction occurs in the tire pressure warning system, the tire pressure warning light blinks to warn the driver. However, if the warning light blinks for 1 minute, and then remains illuminated, making it difficult to determine whether the warning light was blinking initially, turn the engine switch from off to ON and check if the warning light blinks.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization. (→P.341)

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly

→P.338

■ If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to ON, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

WARNING

■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy. When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Decelerate to the lowest appropriate speed as soon as possible. Do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Have the flat tire replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

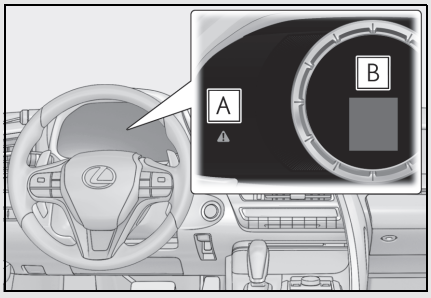
■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

When the main meter is in the center position:



A Master warning light

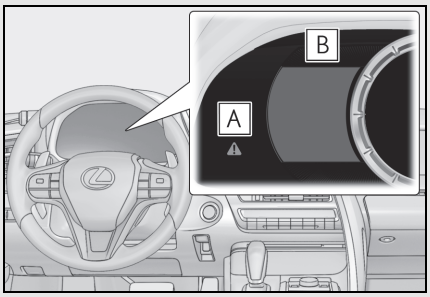
The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages is shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

When the main meter is in the side position:



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages is shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	Comes on	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
Comes on	—	Sounds	
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

System warning lights

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message or image shown on the multi-information display.

● Malfunction in the ABS

The ABS warning light comes on. (→P.372)

● Malfunction in the charging system

The charging system warning light comes on. (→P.371)

● Malfunction in the brake system

The brake system warning light comes on. (→P.371)

● Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P.377)

● Remaining fuel level is low

The low fuel level warning light comes on. (→P.376)

■ **If "Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle" is shown**

The driver's door is opened without turning the engine switch to off with the shift lever in any position other than P. Shift the shift position to P.

■ **If "Shift Is in N Release Accelerator Before Shifting" is shown**

The accelerator pedal has been depressed when the shift position is in N. Release the accelerator pedal and shift the shift position to D or R.

■ **If "Shift system malfunction Driving unavailable" is shown**

There is a malfunction in the shift control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If "Auto Power Off to Conserve Battery" is shown**

Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for the shift lever operation is shown**

To prevent the shift lever from being operated incorrectly or the vehicle from moving unexpectedly, a message that requires shifting the shift lever may be shown on the multi-information display. In that case, follow the instruction of the message and shift the shift lever.

■ **If a message that indicates the malfunction of front camera is displayed**

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.201, 371)

● PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

● LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) (if equipped)

● LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)

● Automatic High Beam (if equipped)

● Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)

● Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

■ **If "Engine Stopped Steering Power Low" is shown**

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy. If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ **If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is shown**

The engine oil level is low. Check the level of engine oil, and add if necessary. This message

may appear if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check to see if the message disappears.

■ **If "Speed Limit Exceeded" is shown**

The vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 120 km/h (75 mph). At this time, a buzzer also sounds. The buzzer will stop sounding after 6 seconds or if you decelerate below 120 km/h (75 mph). Reduce your vehicle speed.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is shown**

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions.
- "Engine Coolant Temp High" (→P.404)
- "Battery low" (→P.389)
- "Transmission Fluid Temp High" (→P.174)

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- "Entry & Start System Malfunction"
- "Shift system malfunction"
- "P switch malfunction"
- "Shift system unavailable"

● If any of the following messages is shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.
- "Braking Power Low"
- "Charging System Malfunction"
- "Oil Pressure Low"

● If "Battery low" is shown, the battery charge is insufficient. Recharge or replace the battery.

■ **If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is shown**

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **While the engine oil level warning message is displayed**

Continued engine operation with low engine oil will damage the engine.

■ **If "High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation" is shown frequently**

Air conditioning, heater and other operations are temporarily limited due to high power consumption. Turn off unnecessary electronic equipment to reduce power consumption, and wait until the power supply returns to normal. If this message is frequently displayed, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead you can continue driving the vehicle with run-flat tires even if any tire goes flat.

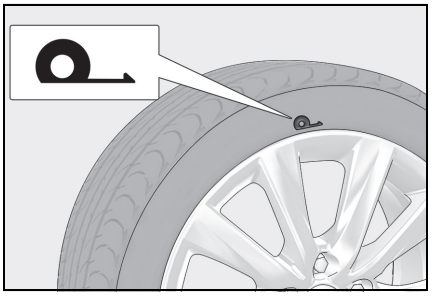
In this case, slow down and drive with extra caution.

Run-flat tires

Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible if any tire goes flat.

The vehicle can be driven for a maximum of 160 km (100 miles) at a speed below 80 km/h (50 mph) after the tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P.377)

A run-flat tire has a mark on the sidewall.



■ In some condition (such as at high temperatures)

You cannot continue driving for up to 160 km (100 miles).

■ For the detailed information on run-flat tires

See the tire warranty booklet.

NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ When driving over bumps

If a vehicle has a flat tire, the vehicle height will be lower than usual. Ensure that nothing strikes the bottom of the vehicle.

■ To avoid damaging the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.340)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.170), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P.388)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle. (→P.196)
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.170)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.83)
- There may be a malfunction in the shift control system.* (→P.172)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

*: It may not be possible to shift the shift position from P.

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.389)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.334)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine.

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.334)
- The battery may be discharged. (→P.389)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the engine in an emergency

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally. Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.181)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACC.

3 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

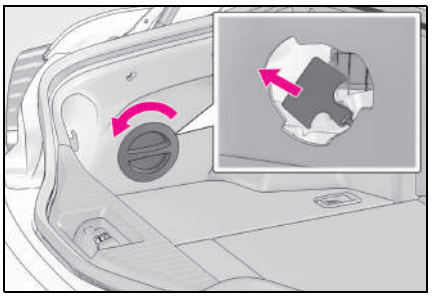
If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be operated, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

Opening the fuel filler door

Open the cover inside the trunk, take out and pull the tab.



WARNING

■ After opening the fuel filler door

Secure the tab in its original position.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.130) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

■ When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated using the Remote Touch or at your Lexus dealer. If it is off, turn the function on.
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.130)

NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys (including the card key) provided with your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

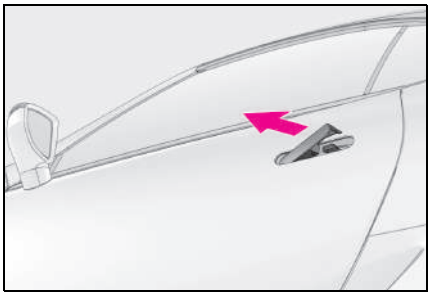
Locking and unlocking the doors, opening the trunk and using the key linked functions

Use the mechanical key (→P.119) in order to perform the following operations:

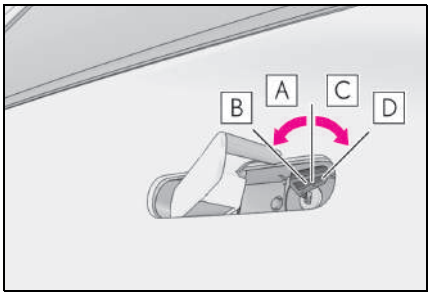
■ Locking and unlocking the door

1 Push in the depression on the front edge of the driver's door handle.

2 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



3 Turn the key in order to perform the following operations.



A Locks both side doors

B Closes the windows (turn and hold)*

C Unlocks the door

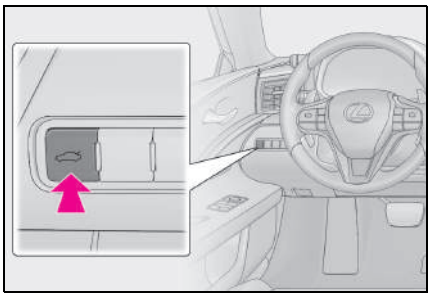
Some models: Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again within 5 seconds unlocks the other door.

D Opens the windows (turn and hold)*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Opening the trunk

Unlock the doors, and press the trunk opener switch.



WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows

Operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.

Starting the engine

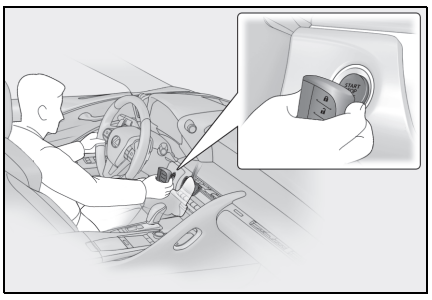
1 Depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to ON.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the

engine switch will turn to ACC.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Set the parking brake, shift the shift position to P and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Electronic key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.353)

■ **Alarm (For South Africa and Malaysia)**

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

■ **Changing engine switch modes**

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step **3** above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.172)

If the battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine or open the doors, trunk or glove box if the battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk

Use the mechanical key (→P.119) in order to perform the following operations:

■ **Locking and unlocking the doors**

→P.388

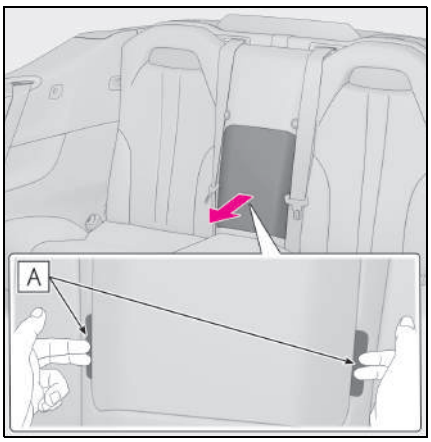
■ **Opening the trunk**

1 Slide the rear passengers' seat belts towards the outside.

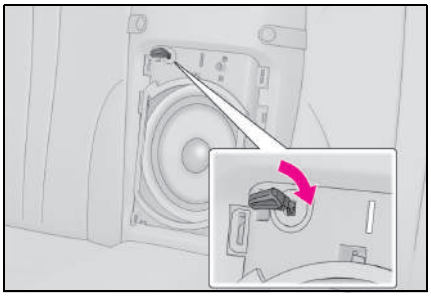
If the seat belt is secured using the rear seat belt holder, remove it. (→P.39)

2 Insert your fingers at the positions marked A and pull towards you to

remove the cover in the center of the rear seat.



3 Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn it clockwise to open.



WARNING

■ After unlocking the trunk

Make sure to put back the cover to the center of the rear seat. Failure to do so may cause an accident.

NOTICE

■ When installing the cover in the center of the rear seat

Make sure that the seat belts are not caught in the cover. Failure to do so may cause damage to the cover installation clip and make it impossible to install the cover.

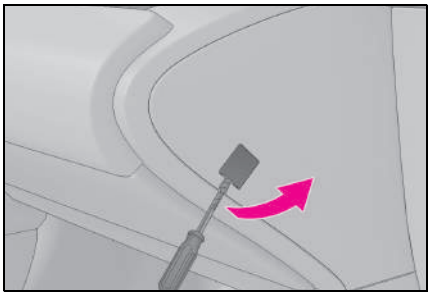
Opening the glove box

The glove box can be opened by performing the following operations after unlocking the doors.

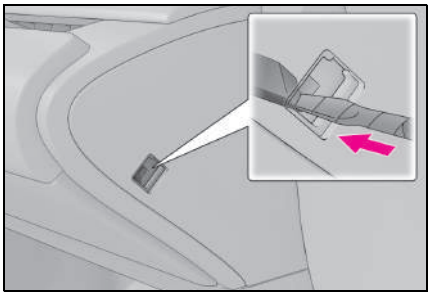
If the glove box is locked, unlock it with the mechanical key. (→P.297)

1 Remove the cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



2 Push the flathead screwdriver into the part shown in the illustration to open the glove box.



■ After opening the glove box

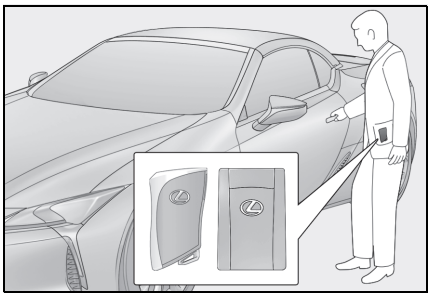
The glove box can be opened normally by closing the glove box after restarting the engine.

Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a battery, you can jump start your vehicle using the following procedure.

1 Confirm that the electronic key (including the card key) is being carried.

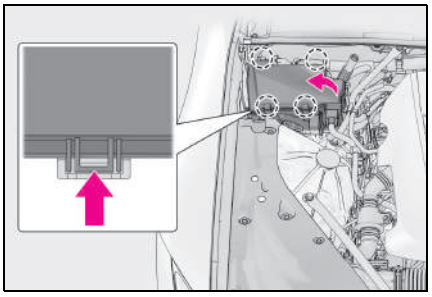
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked. (→P.87)



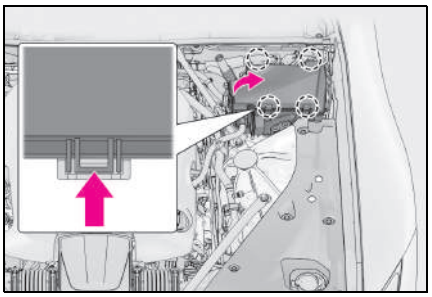
2 Open the hood (→P.325) and open the fuse box cover.

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

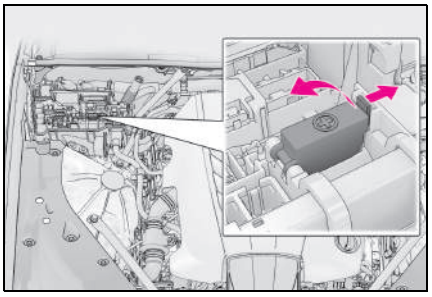


▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

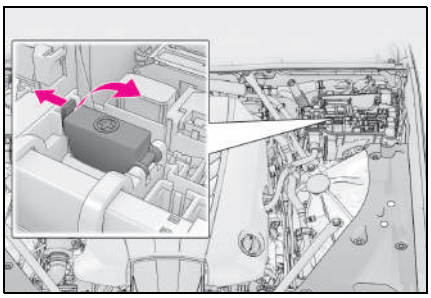


3 Open the exclusive jump starting terminal cover.

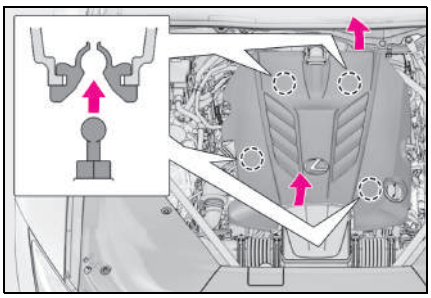
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

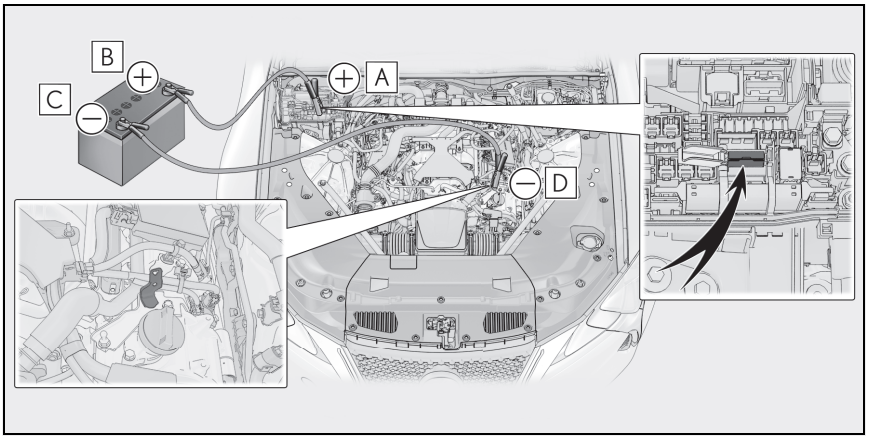


4 Remove the engine cover.

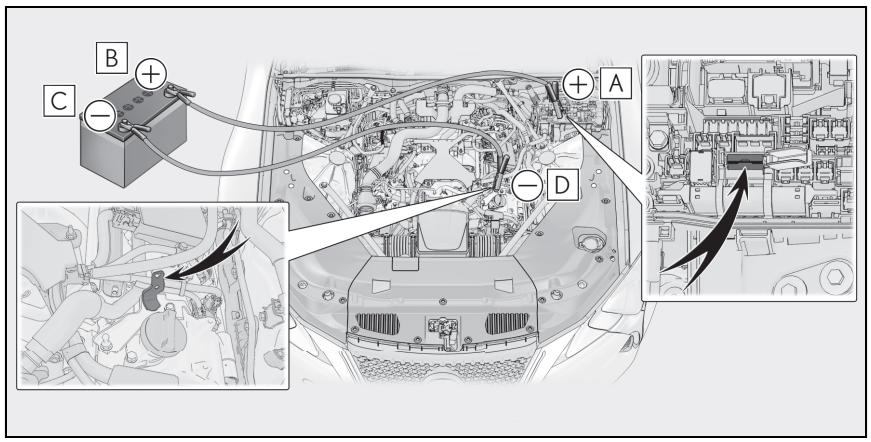


5 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D .

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



A Exclusive jump starting terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the exclusive jump starting terminal and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

6 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

7 Open and close any of the door of your vehicle with the engine switch OFF.

8 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to ON.

9 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

10 Close the exclusive jump starting terminal cover, and reinstall the fuse box cover and engine cover to its original position.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

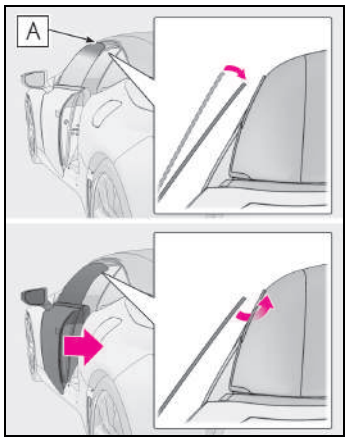
The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is stopped.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

● Side window open/close function linked to door operation does not operate.
When closing the side window, slowly close the side window while pushing the upper portion A of the side window inside the soft top roof.



● Information stored in the ECU is cleared. When the battery is depleted, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

● Some systems may require initialization. (→P.432)

■ **When removing the battery terminals**

When the battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is cleared. Before removing the battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When recharging or replacing the battery**

● Immediately after replacing the battery, fully open or close the soft top roof, as the luggage cover may be half-opened.

● In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.

● The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.

● The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.

● If the battery discharges, it may not be possible to shift the shift position to other positions. In this case, the vehicle cannot be towed without lifting both rear wheels because the rear wheels will be locked. (→P.366)

■ **When replacing the battery**

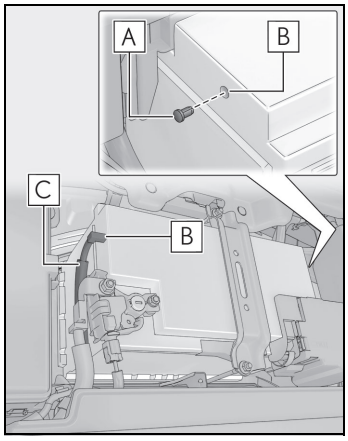
● Use a Central Degassing type battery (European Regulations).

● Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN4), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (80Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (685A) or greater.
- If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
- If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the battery may discharge and engine may not be able to start.

● Use a battery with a handle. If a battery without a handle is used, removal is more difficult.

● After exchanging, firmly attach the following items to the exhaust hole of the battery.
- Use the exhaust hose that was attached

to the battery before exchanging.
- Use the exhaust hole plug included with the battery exchanged or the one installed on the battery prior to the exchange. (Depending on the battery to be exchanged, the exhaust hole may be plugged.)



A Exhaust hole plug

B Exhaust hole

C Exhaust hose

For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When removing the battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- If the battery fluid level is excessively low (→P.335), do not use the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

WARNING

■ **After recharging the battery**

Have the battery inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. If the battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

■ **When exchanging the battery**

After exchanging, securely attach the exhaust hose and exhaust hole plug to the exhaust hole of the exchanged battery. If not properly installed, gases (hydrogen) may leak into the vehicle interior, and there is the possible danger of the gas igniting and exploding.

NOTICE

■ **When handling jumper cables**

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fan or engine drive belt.

■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

The exclusive jump starting terminal is to be used when charging the battery from another vehicle in an emergency. It cannot be used to jump start another vehicle.

If the soft top roof cannot be closed

If the soft top roof cannot be closed even though the roof switch is operated, check that all the operational conditions are met. (→P.153)

If all the operational conditions are met and the soft top roof cannot be closed, there may be a malfunction. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

When "Opening Function Unavailable System Overheated" or "Function Temporarily Unavailable System Overheated" is displayed on the multi-information display, do not close the soft top roof manually. If the soft top roof is closed manually, the roof switch may not properly operates next time.

In this case, the soft top roof can be closed by the following procedure as an emergency measure, however, Lexus does not recommend it as this procedure requires specialized knowledge.

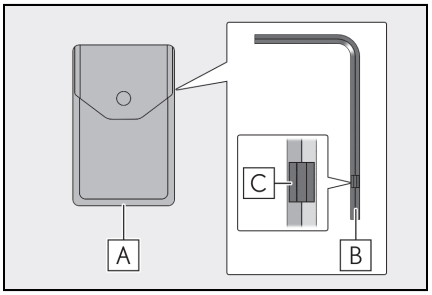
Before closing the soft top roof

- Two or more people are needed for this procedure and some steps requires a large force.
- There is a possibility to damage the vehicle when applying a strong force or removing the parts. Lexus recommends contacting your Lexus

dealer.

- When touching a place where a hand can not easily reach, wear gloves to protect your hands.
- Turn the engine switch off.
- The tool for manually closing the soft top roof is stored in the glove box. (→P.297)

Tool



A Tool bag

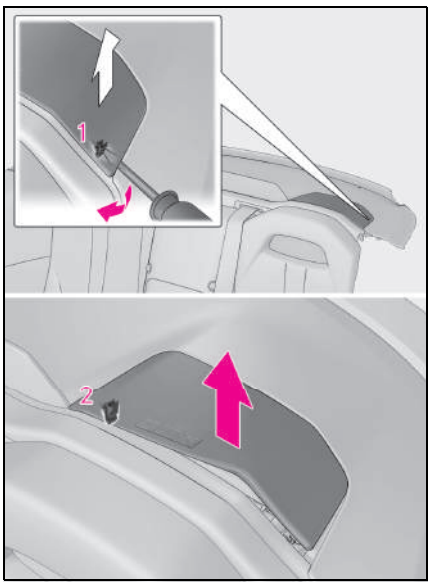
B Tool

C Groove

Closing the soft top roof

1 Press the All window control switch to fully open the side windows and rear quarter windows. (→P.148) If the switch does not operate, contact your Lexus dealer.

2 Remove the cover behind the rear left seat.

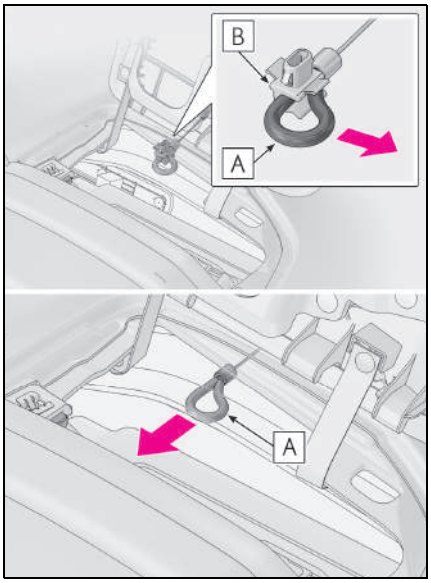


1 Remove the claw on the left side using the flathead screwdriver.

The flathead screwdriver is installed in the trunk.

2 Remove the claw on the right side.

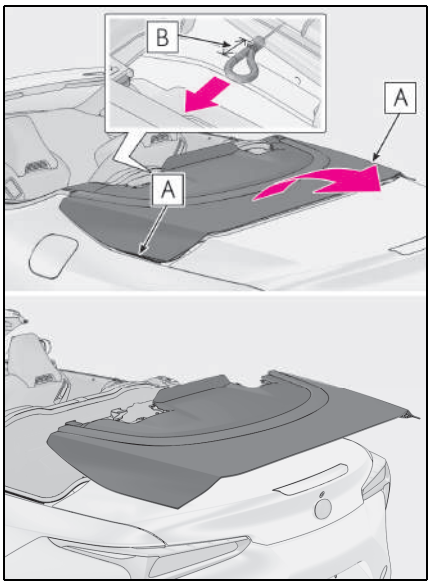
3 Take out the yellow ring [A] from the clamp [B] and pull it.



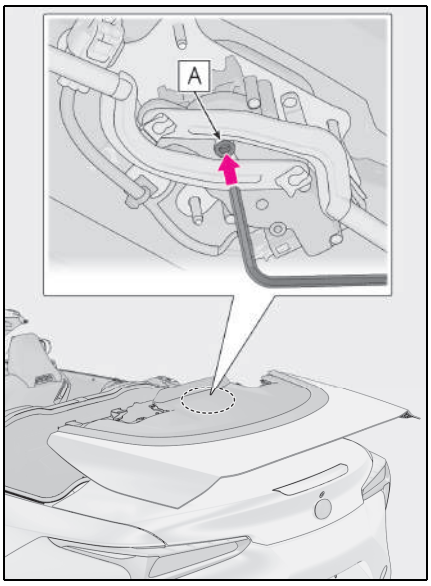
4 While pulling the yellow ring to unlock the luggage cover, hold the portions [A] of the luggage cover and lift it to the rear of the vehicle without tilting laterally.

If your hands are released while lifting the luggage cover, the luggage cover may shut, resulting in hands or arms being caught between the cover and vehicle.

After lifting the luggage cover up, attach the portion [B] between the red line and root of the yellow ring to the clamp.

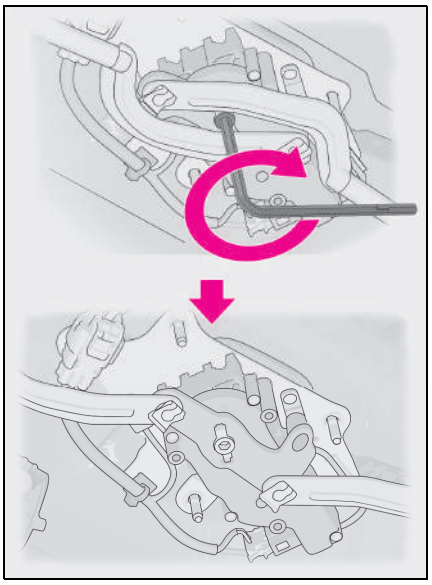


5 Insert the tool into the hole [A] on the center of the back side of the luggage cover.

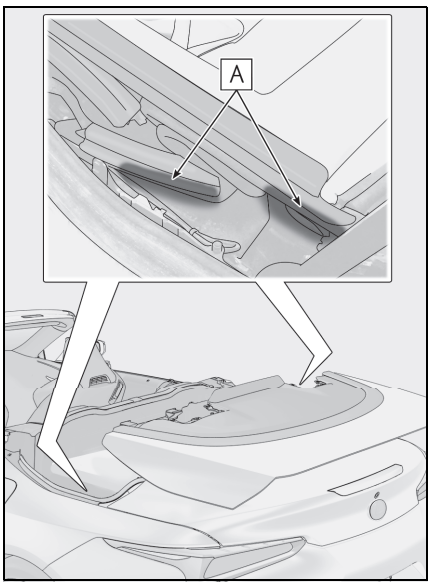


6 Rotate the tool until it no longer moves.

Rotate the tool again with applying more force to check that the tool has been completely rotated.



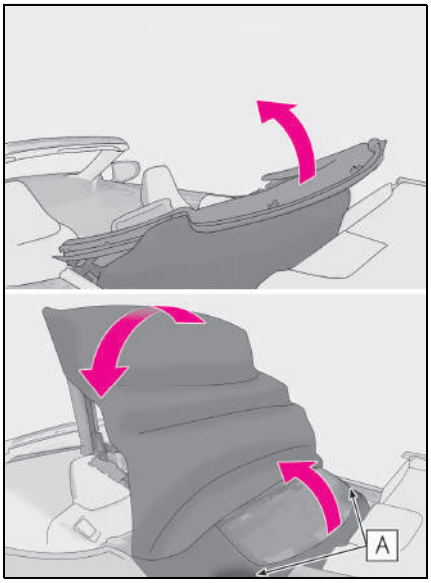
7 Hold the both right and left portions [A] of the stored soft top roof simultaneously.



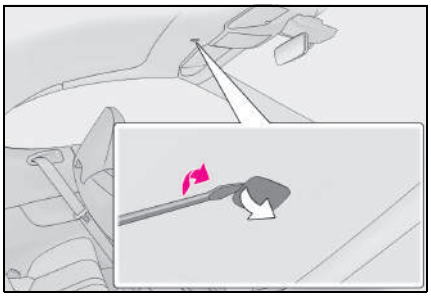
8 Lift up the soft top roof without tilting laterally, move it to the front of the vehicle, and close it.

After lifting up the soft top roof to the position shown in the illustration, lower the front part of the soft top roof holding the

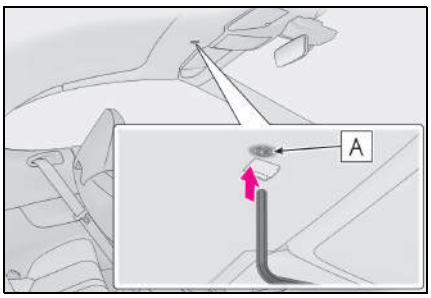
lower part A of the rear window.



9 Remove the cover inside the soft top roof using a flathead screwdriver.



10 Insert the tool into the hole A .

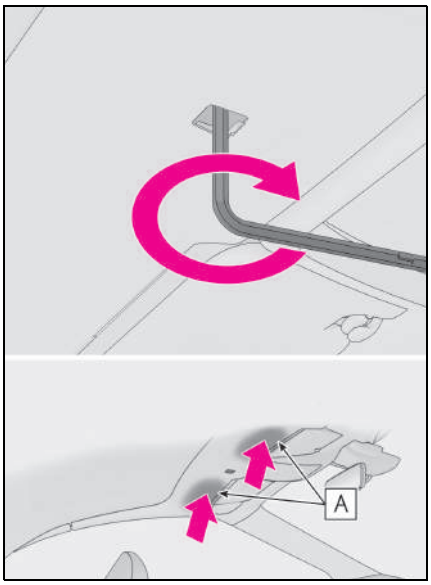


11 Rotate the tool until it no longer moves.

The front side of the soft top roof will be locked.

Push the inner side A of the soft top roof to check that the soft top roof is firmly locked and not raised.

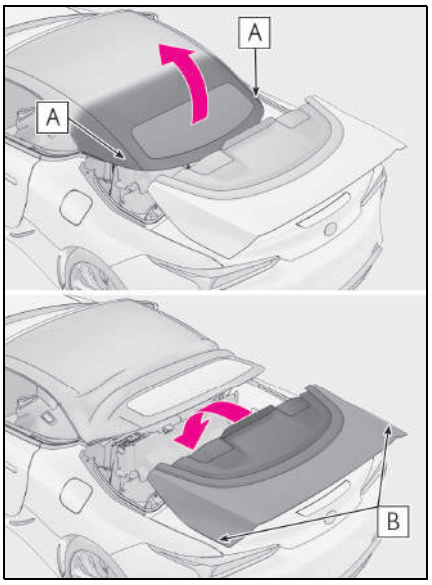
If the soft top roof is not firmly locked, it may be opened by wind pressure while driving.



12 While lifting the portion A of the under the rear window, hold the

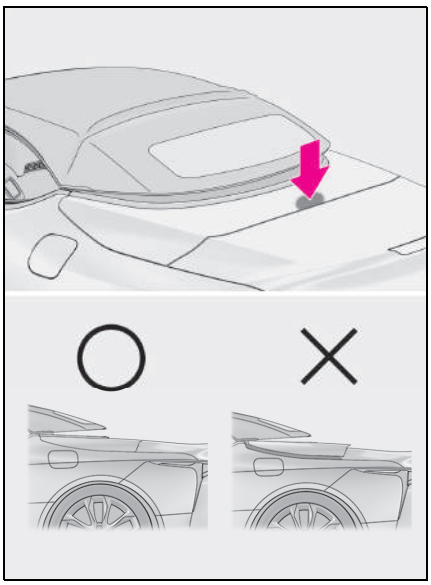
portion B of the luggage cover and move it to the front side of the vehicle and close it.

When closing the luggage cover, be careful that your hand or fingers is not caught in the luggage cover and vehicle.

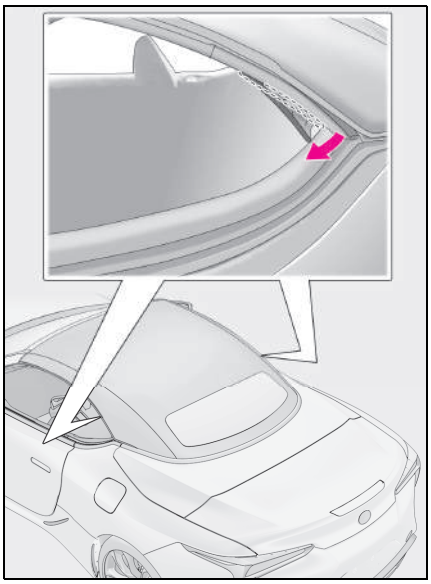


13 Lower the rear window and push the rear center of the luggage cover.

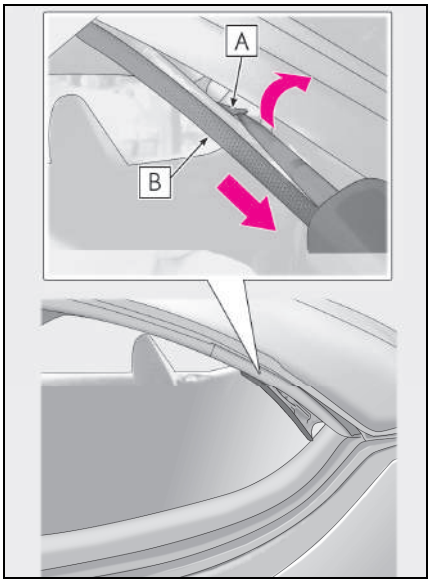
Check that there is no difference in height between the luggage cover and trunk and the luggage cover is properly closed.



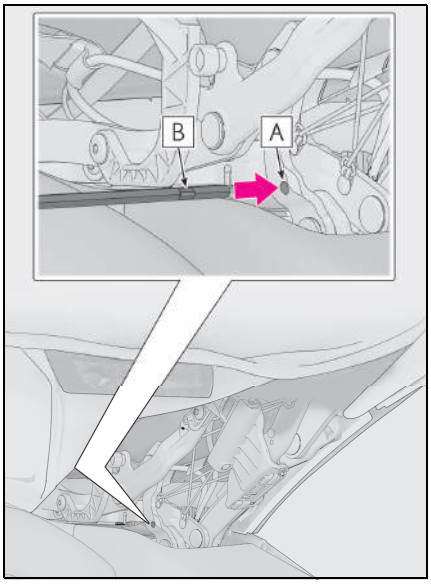
14 Turn the inside of the soft top roof.



15 Lift up the claw [A] using a flathead screwdriver, and pull the portion [B] backward of the vehicle.



16 Insert the tool edge with a groove [B] into the hole [A] until the tool stops.

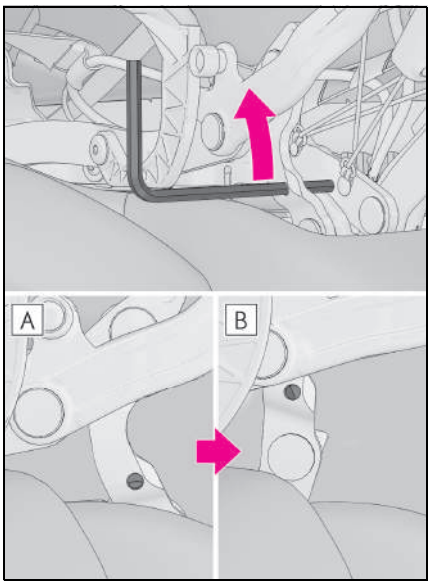


17 Push the tool backward to a slanting side at the rear of the vehicle until it no longer moves.

A large force is required to move the tool.

The tool will move from the position [A] to

the position B in the illustration.



18 Turn the engine switch to ON and check that "Soft Top Operation Not Completed" is not displayed on the multi-information display.

If the message is displayed, check the steps **6**, **11** and **17** have been completed.

19 Reinsert the parts that were removed in the steps **2**, **9** and **15**.

The parts removed in the step **2** cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ Parts removed during the manual closing procedure

Keep any parts removed during the procedure inside the vehicle and take all removed parts and the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When manually closing the soft top roof

Observe the following precautions:

- Stop the vehicle on a flat surface in a safe place.
- Set the parking brake and shift the shift position to P.
- Ensure that there are no occupants inside the vehicle.
- Do not perform this procedure while there are strong winds blowing.
- Turn the engine switch off.
- Be careful not to catch any part of your body or clothing in the moving parts.
- Some parts of this procedure may result in an injury if performed with bare hands. Protect your hands with gloves or a piece of cloth when performing the procedure.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

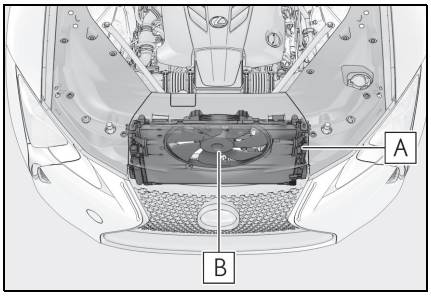
- The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.97) is in the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

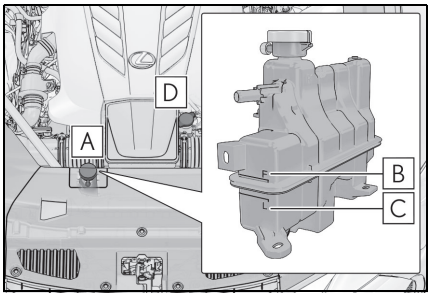


A Radiator

B Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.



A Reservoir

B "F" line

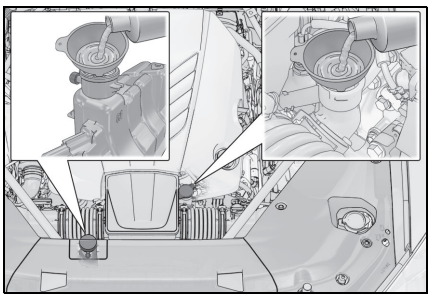
C "L" line

D Coolant inlet cap

5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if

coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

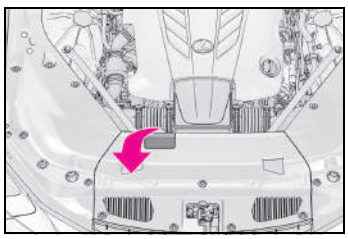
The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

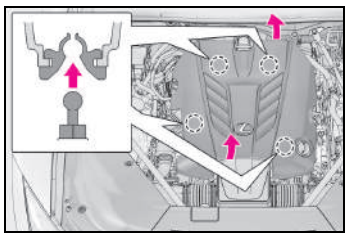
When adding coolant

Add coolant in accordance with the following procedure.

1 Remove the service cover.



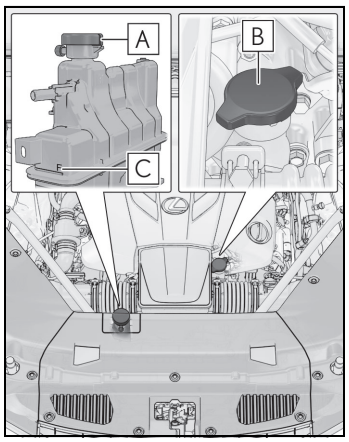
2 Remove the engine cover.



3 Remove the caps A and B .

4 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap A up to the "F" line C , and then replace the cap A .

5 Add coolant through the inlet of the cap B until it is full, and then replace the cap B .



WARNING

When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.

WARNING

- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fan and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- While the engine and radiator are hot, do not loosen or remove the coolant inlet cap or coolant reservoir cap. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

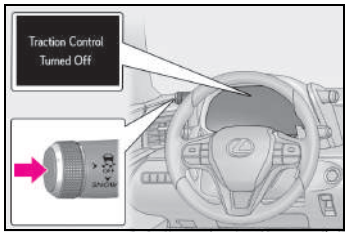
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

1. Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift position to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift position to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press the OFF / SNOW switch to turn off TRC.



WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift position

Be careful not to shift the shift position with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 410

Fuel information 419

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 420

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize 432

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4760 mm (187.4 in.)
Overall width		1920 mm (75.6 in.)
Overall height*		1350 mm (53.1 in.)
Wheelbase		2870 mm (113.0 in.)
Tread*	Front	1630 mm (64.2 in.)
	Rear	1635 mm (64.4 in.)

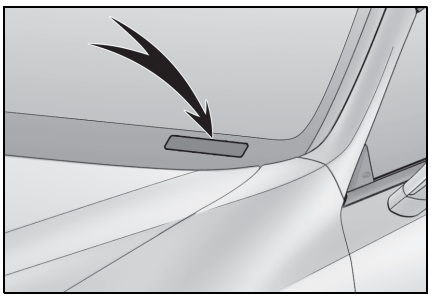
*: Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

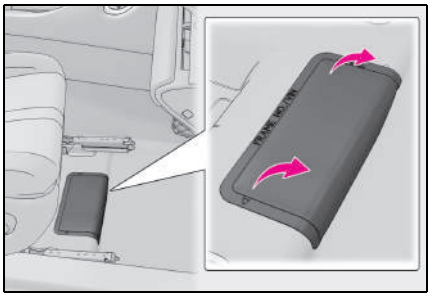
Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

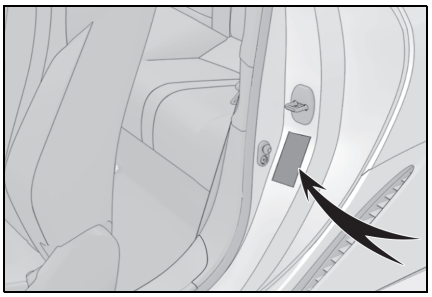
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.



This number is also on the Certification Regulation label*1 or the manufacturer's label*2.



*1: For Korea, GCC countries*3, Jordan and Lebanon

*2: Except for Korea, GCC countries*3, Jordan and Lebanon

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

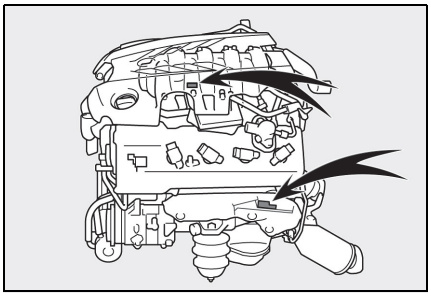
■ **Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries*, Jordan and Lebanon)**

The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ **Engine number**

The engine number is located as shown.



Engine

Model	2UR-GSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 89.5 mm (3.70 × 3.52 in.)
Displacement	4969 cm^3 (303.2 cu.in.)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed*1	270 km/h (168 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)*1	540 N•m @ 4800 rpm
Maximum output (NET)*1	351 kW @ 7100 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.410)

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only

Research Octane Number	98 or higher*
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	82 L (21.7 gal., 18.0 Imp.gal.)

*: If unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 is not available, unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 may be used with no detriment to engine durability or driveability.

Lubrication system

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	8.6 L (9.1 qt., 7.6 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	7.9 L (8.4 qt., 7.0 Imp.qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

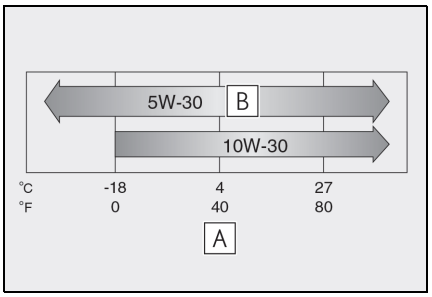
Oil grade:

5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving" or SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 5W-30 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

B Preferred

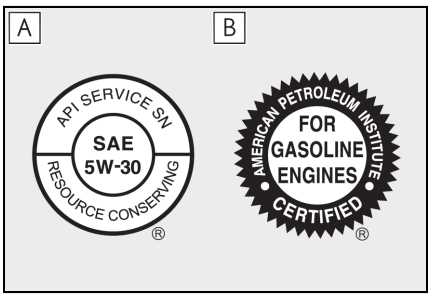
Oil viscosity (5W-30 is explained here as an example):

- The 5W in 5W-30 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 30 in 5W-30 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a

higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 5W-30" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	12.1 L (12.8 qt., 10.6 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

Ignition system

Spark plug

Make	DENSO FK20HBR-J8
Gap	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)

NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

■ Battery

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.250 or higher
Charging rates: Quick charge Slow charge	 15 A max. 5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	8.8 L (9.3 qt., 7.7 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ **Automatic transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Differential

Oil capacity	0.85 L (0.90 qt., 0.75 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	▶ Without LSD (Limited Slip Differential) Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent* ▶ With LSD (Limited Slip Differential) Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent*

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory.

Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	132 mm (5.2 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1.0 — 6.0 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Brake pad wear limit	1.0 mm (0.04 in.)
Parking brake indicator*2	When pushing the parking brake switch for 1 to 4 seconds: comes on When pulling the parking brake switch for 1 to 4 seconds: turns off
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3, SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 500 N (51.0 kgf, 112.4 lbf) while the engine is running.
When performing the brake pedal inspection, also be sure to check that the brake system warning light is not illuminated when the engine is running. (If the brake system warning light is illuminated, refer to P.371)

*2: Make sure to confirm that the brake system warning light (yellow) does not illuminate. (If the brake system warning light illuminates, refer to P.375)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels (except for Korea)

▶ 20-inch tires

Tire size	Front tires: 245/45RF20 99Y Rear tires: 275/40RF20 102Y

Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire and rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	Front wheels: 20 × 8 1/2J Rear wheels: 20 × 9 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)	

▶ 21-inch tires

Tire size	Front tires: 245/40RF21 96Y Rear tires: 275/35RF21 99Y	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire and rear tire kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	300 (3.0, 44)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	Front wheels: 21 × 8 1/2J Rear wheels: 21 × 9 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)	

Tires and wheels (for Korea)

▶ 20-inch tires

Tire manufacturer	Bridgestone
Tire rolling resistance rating (5 levels)*	5
Tire wet grip rating (5 levels)*	2
Tire size	Front tires: 245/45RF20 99Y Rear tires: 275/40RF20 102Y

Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions: Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi) Driving at high speeds (above 220 km/h [137 mph]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law): Add 70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 10 psi) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	Front wheels: 20 × 8 1/2J Rear wheels: 20 × 9 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)

▶ 21-inch tires

Tire manufacturer	Bridgestone	Michelin
Tire rolling resistance rating (5 levels)*	5	5
Tire wet grip rating (5 levels)*	2	2
Tire size	Front tires: 245/40RF21 96Y Rear tires: 275/35RF21 99Y	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions: Front: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi) Driving at high speeds (above 220 km/h [137 mph]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law): Add 70 kPa (0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 10 psi) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.	
Wheel size	Front wheels: 21 × 8 1/2J Rear wheels: 21 × 9 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	140 N•m (14.3 kgf•m, 103.3 ft•lbf)	

*: A rating closer to "1" indicates higher performance.

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Rear fog light	21	A
Interior	Vanity lights	2	B

A: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

B: Double end bulbs

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

For Argentina:
You must only use unleaded gasoline. Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 or higher for optimum engine performance.
Except for Argentina:
Select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 98 or higher for optimum engine performance.
If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91.
The use of such gasoline may cause the engine to knock or drastically reduce output to protect itself while driving with a heavy load. To avoid this, refill the tank with premium unleaded gasoline as soon as possible.

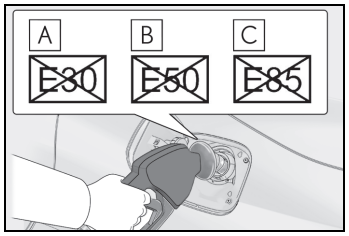
■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

▶ Except for Korea

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

▶ For Korea

- Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30 (30% ethanol [A]), E50 (50% ethanol [B]), E85 (85% ethanol [C]) (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).



- Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a suitable Research Octane Number.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed by using the meter control switches, the Remote Touch or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ **Changing by using the meter control switches**

1 Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches, select ⚙.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches, select the item, and press "OK".

3 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches, select the desired setting, and press "OK".

To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press ↩.

■ **Changing by using the Remote Touch**

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

2 Select "Setup" on the menu screen and select "Vehicle".

3 Select "Vehicle Customization", "LEXUS park assist" or "Drive mode customization".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

For details on the Remote Touch, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ **When customizing using the Remote Touch**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift position to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

⚠ WARNING

■ **During customization**

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ **During customization**

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch

B Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

■ **Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.92, 97, 100)**

Function*1	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language*2	English	French	—	O	—
		Spanish			
		Simplified Chinese			
		Arabic*3			
Units*2	L/100 km	km/L	O	O	—
Eco Driving Indicator Light	Off	On (Self-lighting)	—	O	—
Drive information 1	Current fuel economy	*4	—	O	—
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)	*4	—	O	—
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Pop-up display	On	Off	—	O	—
Ring position memory	Off	On	—	O	—
Accent color	Color 1	Color 2	O*5	O	—
Rev indicator	Off	On	—	O	—
Rev indicator red zone setting	5000 r/min.	2000 - 7300 r/min.	—	O	—
Rev peak	Off	On	—	O	—

Function[*1]	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Clock	12-hour display	24-hour display	—	O	—
Sensor sensitivity for darkening the brightness of the instrument cluster depending on the outside brightness	Standard	-2 to 2	—	—	O
Sensor sensitivity for returning the brightness of the instrument cluster to the original level depending on the outside brightness	Standard	-2 to 2	—	—	O
Suggestion function	On	On (when the vehicle is stopped)	O	—	O
		Off			

[*1]: For details about each function: →P.97, 104

[*2]: The default setting varies according to country.

[*3]: The customized setting varies according to country.

[*4]: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption, average fuel economy (after reset), average fuel economy (after start), average fuel economy (after refuel), average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), blank.

[*5]: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ HUD (Head-up Display)* (→P.107)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Gauge information	Tachometer	Eco Driving Indicator Light	—	O	—
		No display			
Driving support display (Navigation system*)	On	Off	—	O	—
Driving support display (Lane display*)	On	Off	—	O	—
Driving support display (Driving assist*)	On	Off	—	O	—

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driving support display (Compass*)	On	Off	—	O	—
Driving support display (Audio*)	On	Off	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ **LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*/LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*** (→P.211, 219)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lane centering function*	Off	On	—	O	—
Steering assist/control	On	Off	—	O	—
Alert sensitivity	Standard	High	—	O	—
Vehicle sway warning	On	Off	—	O	—
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	Low	—	O	—
		High			

*: If equipped

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System)*** (→P.203)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PCS (Pre-Collision System)*	On	Off	—	O	—
Adjust alert timing	Middle	Far	—	O	—
		Near			

*: If equipped

■ **BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*1** (→P.254)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	On	Off	—	O	—
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert)	On	Off	—	O	—
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	Bright	Dim	—	O	—

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)*2	 (Intermediate)	 (Early)	—	O	—
		 (Late)			
		 (Only when in blind spot)			
RCTA buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	—	O	—
		Level 3			

*1: If equipped

*2: BSM function only

■ **Door lock (→P.120, 124, 387)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key*	Both side doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps	—	—	O
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	O	—	O
Shift position linked door locking function	Off	On	O	—	O
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Off	On	O	—	O
Driver's door linked door unlocking function*	On	Off	O	—	O
Locking/unlocking of the trunk when both side doors are locked/unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the door lock indicator lights turn off	30 seconds	1 minute	—	—	O
		10 minutes			
		20 minutes			

*: The default setting varies according to countries.

■ **Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.118, 128)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operating signal (Buzzers)*	5	Off	O	—	O
		1 to 7			
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	—	—	O

*: On some models

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P.128)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	—	O
Smart door unlocking*	Both side doors	Driver's door	O	—	O
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times	As many as desired	—	—	O

*: The default setting varies according to countries.

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.118)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O
Unlocking operation*1	Both side doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, both side doors unlocked in two steps	O	—	O
Trunk unlocking operation	Press and hold (short)	One short press	—	—	O
		Push twice			
		Press and hold (long)			
		Off			
Alarm (panic mode)*2	On	Off	—	—	O

*1: The default setting varies according to countries.

*2: If equipped

■ **Driving position memory (→P.138)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Selecting the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	Driver's door	Both side doors	—	—	O
Driver's seat slide movement when exiting the vehicle	Full	Off	O	—	O
		Partial			
Steering wheel movement	Tilt only	Telescopic only	O	—	O
		Tilt & telescopic			
		Off			

■ **Outside rear view mirrors (→P.145)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation	Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	—	—	O
		Linked to operation of the engine switch			

■ **Power windows (→P.148)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	—	—	O
Wireless remote control linked operation*	Off	On	—	—	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)*	On	Off	—	—	O

*: Except for Korea

■ **Turn signal lever (→P.180)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	5	—	—	O
		7			
		Off			

■ **Automatic light control system (→P.186)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	—	O
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on*	Standard	Long	—	—	O
Automatic light off system*	Linked to the driver's doors	Linked to operation of the engine switch	—	—	O
Follow me home* (Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off)	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

*: On some models

■ Lights (→P.186)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Daytime running lights*	On	Off	○	—	○
Welcome light illumination control	On	Off	—	—	○

*: On some models

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P.282)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation*	On	Off	○	—	○
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	○	—	○
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity*	Standard	-3 to 3	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ Seat heater*/seat ventilators (→P.291)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○
Passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ Heated steering wheel* (→P.291)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (low) to 2 (high)	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ Illumination (→P.295)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	—	O
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	—	O
Footwell lighting	On	Off	—	—	O
Door trim ornament lights	On	Off	—	—	O
Time elapsed before the outside door handle lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	—	O
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation of the outside door handle lights when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation of the outside door handle lights when a door is opened	On	Off	—	—	O
Fading out of the outside door handle lights when they turn off	Long	Short	—	—	O

■ Alarm (→P.86)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Cancellation when the mechanical key is used to unlock*	Off	On	—	—	O

*: The default setting varies according to countries.

■ **Rain-sensing windshield wipers (→P.192)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wiper operation when the wiper switch is in the AUTO position	Rain-sensing operation	Intermittent operation linked to vehicle speed (with interval adjuster)	—	—	O

■ **Reverse warning buzzer (→P.174)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Signal (buzzer) when the shift position is in R	Single	Intermittent	—	—	O

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.249)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On	Off	—	O	—
Detection distance of the front center sensor	Far	Near	O	—	O
Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Far	Near	O	—	O
Buzzer volume	Level 2	Level 1	O	—	O
		Level 3			

■ **Driving mode select switch (→P.248)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in custom mode	Normal	Power	O	—	—
		Eco			
Chassis control in custom mode	Normal	Sport	O	—	—
		Comfort			
Air conditioning operation in custom mode	Normal	Eco	O	—	—

■ **Vehicle customization**

● When the speed-detecting automatic door lock and shift-linked automatic door lock are both on, the door lock operates as follows.

- When shifting the shift position to any position other than P, both side doors will

be locked.
- If the vehicle is started with both side doors locked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will not operate.
- If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed-detecting automatic door lock will operate.

● When the smart entry & start system is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.

● When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function settings.

● Some settings can be changed using a switch or the audio system screen. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the audio system screen until the engine switch is turned off and then to ON.

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system	• When rotating the tires. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed by changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures) • After registering the ID codes. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.	P.341
Power windows	• When functioning abnormally	P.149
Lexus parking assist monitor	• The steering wheel has been moved while the battery was being reinstalled. • Battery power is low.	Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".
Message indicating maintenance is required (for Korea)	• After the maintenance is performed	P.311

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 434
Alphabetical index 436

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.386)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.386)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.353)
- Is the engine switch in ON?

When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.172)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.130)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P.126)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.170)
- Is the shift position in P? (→P.173)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.129)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P.170)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?

In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.388)

- Is the battery discharged? (→P.389)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P.170)



The side windows or rear quarter windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The windows other than the side window at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.151)



The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACC or ON (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.172)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P.376)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.181)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.371, 380)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (if equipped)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?

The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P.86)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to ON or start the engine.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.380)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.371, 380.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Slow down the vehicle, drive with extra caution, and take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible to have the tire replaced. (→P.384)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.406)

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 282
Air conditioning filter 352
Automatic air conditioning system 282
Pollen removal mode 288
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 265
Function 265
Warning light 372
ACA (Active Cornering Assist) 266
Active Cornering Assist (ACA) 266
Active roll bar 49
Package tray 51
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS) 266
Airbag manual on-off system 53
Airbags 41
Airbag manual on-off system 53
Airbag operating conditions 43
Airbag precautions for your child 45
Correct driving posture 35
General airbag precautions 45
Locations of airbags 41
Modification and disposal of airbags 47
Side airbag operating conditions 43
Side airbag precautions 45
SRS airbags 41
SRS warning light 372
Air conditioning filter 352
Air conditioning system 282
Air conditioning filter 352
Automatic air conditioning system 282
Pollen removal mode 288
Alarm
Alarm 86
Warning buzzer 371
Anchor brackets 75
Antennas (smart entry & start system) 128
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 265
Function 265
Warning light 372
Approach warning
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 233
Dynamic radar cruise control 242
Automatic headlight leveling system 187
Automatic High Beam 189
Automatic light control system 187
Automatic transmission 173
M mode 179
Paddle shift switches 178
Snow mode 178
Auxiliary net 297
Average fuel economy 102
Average vehicle speed 102
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) 266

B

Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 359
Battery 333
Battery checking 335
If the battery is discharged 389
Preparing and checking before winter 271
Replacing 394
Warning light 371
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 254
Blind Spot Monitor function 259
Rear Cross Traffic Alert function 261
Brake
Brake hold 184
Fluid 415
Parking brake 181
Warning light 371, 375
Warning message 381
Brake assist 265
Brake hold 184
Break-in tips 163
Brightness control

Instrument panel light control....99
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....254
Blind Spot Monitor function....259
Rear Cross Traffic Alert function....261

C

Care....304, 308
Aluminum wheels....305
Exterior....304
Interior....308
Seat belts....308
Cargo hooks....299
Center Display....276
Chains....272
Child restraint system....55, 74
Fixed with a seat belt....77
Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage....73
Fixed with an ISOFIX rigid anchor....78
Points to remember....55, 74
Riding with children....54
Types of child restraint system installation method....75
Child safety....54
Airbag precautions....45
Battery precautions....333
Child restraint system....55, 74
Heated steering wheel and seat heater precautions....291
How your child should wear the seat belt....38
Installing child restraints....56, 76
Power window lock switch....151
Power window precautions....150
Removed electronic key battery precautions....354
Seat belt precautions....54
Trunk precautions....124
Cleaning....304, 308
Aluminum wheels....305
Exterior....304
Interior....308
Radar sensor....199, 258
Seat belts....308
Clock....97, 300
Condenser....331
Console box....298
Console box light....298
Consumption screen....111
Coolant
Capacity....413
Checking....330
Preparing and checking before winter....271
Cooling system....328
Engine overheating....404
Cornering lights....188
Cruise control
Cruise control....245
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....227
Dynamic radar cruise control....237
Cup holder....298
Current fuel consumption....102
Customizable features....420

D

Daytime running light system....186
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors....283
Rear window....283
Windshield....283
Differential....414
Dimension....410
Display
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....254
Consumption screen....111
Drive information....102
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....227

Dynamic radar cruise control 237
Head-up display 107
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 222
Lexus parking assist 249
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 214
Multi-information display 100
Warning message 380
Distance 102
Do-it-yourself maintenance 312
Door courtesy lights 295
Door lock
Door lock indicator 123
Doors 120
Smart entry & start system 128
Wireless remote control 118
Door pockets 297
Doors 120
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 124
Door glasses 148
Door lock indicator 123
Door lock 120
Open door warning buzzer 122, 123
Outside rear view mirrors 145
Double locking system 85
Drive info 1/Drive info 2 102
Drive information 102
Driver's seat position memory 138
Driving position memory 138
Memory recall function 140
Power easy access system 138
Drive-start control 163
Driving 162
Break-in tips 163
Correct driving posture 35
Driving mode select switch 248
Eco-friendly driving tips 273
Procedures 162
Winter drive tips 271
Driving mode select switch 248
Driving position memory
Power easy access system 138
Dynamic radar cruise control 237
Warning message 244
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 227
Warning message 235

E

eCall 80
ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System) 265
Eco drive mode 227
Eco Driving Indicator 95
Eco Driving Indicator Light 95
EDR (Event data recorder) 7
Elapsed time 102
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function 266
Warning light 373
Electronically Controlled Brake System (ECB) 265
Electronic key 116
Battery-saving function 129
If the electronic key does not operate properly 387
Replacing the battery 353
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds 371
If a warning light turns on 371
If a warning message is displayed 380
If the battery is discharged 389
If the electronic key does not operate properly 387
If the engine will not start 385
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 387
If the soft top roof cannot be closed 396
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 363

If you have a flat tire 384
If you lose your keys 386
If you think something is wrong 369
If your vehicle becomes stuck 406
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362
If your vehicle needs to be towed 365
If your vehicle overheats 404
Emergency brake signal 266
Emergency flashers 362
Engine
ACC 172
Compartment 327
Engine switch 170
Fuel pump shut off system 370
Hood 325
How to start the engine 170
Identification number 411
If the engine will not start 385
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362
Ignition switch (engine switch) 170
Overheating 404
Engine coolant 330
Capacity 413
Checking 330
Preparing and checking before winter 271
Engine coolant temperature gauge 97
Engine immobilizer system 83
Engine oil 328
Capacity 412
Checking 328
Oil level warning message 382
Oil pressure warning light 372
Preparing and checking before winter 271
Engine oil temperature gauge 97
Engine switch 170
Auto power off function 172
Changing the engine switch modes 172
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362
Starting the engine 170
EPS (Electric Power Steering) 266
Function 266
Warning light 373
Event data recorder (EDR) 7
Exhaust Gas Filter system 265
Exhaust gas precautions 52

F

First-aid kit storage belt 299
Flat tire 384
Tire pressure warning system 337
Floor mats 34
Fluid
Automatic transmission 414
Brake 415
Washer 331
Fog light 191
Replacing light bulbs 359
Switch 191
Wattage 418
Follow me home system 188
Footwell light 295
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs 359
Switch 186
Welcome light illumination control 187
Front seats 136
Adjustment 136
Cleaning 308
Correct driving posture 35
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints 142
Jam protection function 137
Memory recall function 140
Neck heaters 291
Power easy access system 138
Seat heaters 291

Seat position memory 138
Seat ventilators 291
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 359
Turn signal lever 180
Fuel 196
Capacity 411
Fuel gauge 97
Fuel pump shut off system 370
Information 419
Refueling 196
Type 411
Warning light 376
Fuel consumption
Average fuel consumption after refueling 102
Average fuel economy 102
Current fuel consumption 102
Fuel filler door 196
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 387
Refueling 196
Fuel gauge 97
Fuel pump shut off system 370
Fuses 355

G

Gauges 97
Gear positions 102
G-force 103
Glove box 297
Glove box light 297

H

Headlight cleaners 192
Headlights 186
Automatic High Beam system 189
Follow me home system 188
Light switch 186
Replacing light bulbs 359
Head restraints 142
Neck heaters 291
Head-up display 107
Heated steering wheel 291
Heaters
Air conditioning system 282
Heated steering wheel 291
Neck heaters 291
Outside rear view mirrors 283
Seat heaters 291
Hill-start assist control 266
Hood 325
Open 325
Pop Up Hood 47
Hooks
Cargo hooks 299
Retaining hooks (floor mat) 34
Horn 143

I

Identification
Engine 411
Vehicle 410
Ignition switch (engine switch) 170
Auto power off function 172
Changing the engine switch modes 172
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 362
Starting the engine 170
Illuminated entry system 295
Immobilizer system 83
Indicators 93
Initialization
Items to initialize 432
Maintenance 311
Multi-information display 104
Power windows 149
Rear quarter windows 149
Tire pressure warning system 341
Inside rear view mirror 144

Instrument panel light control....99
Interior lights....295
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....87
ISOFIX lower anchorage....73
ISOFIX rigid anchors....78

J

Jack
Positioning a floor jack....326
Vehicle-equipped jack....345
Jack handle....345
Jam protection function
Front seats....137
Power windows....148
Rear quarter windows....148

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system....128
Wireless remote control....118
Keys....116
Battery-saving function....129
Electronic key....116
Engine switch....170
If the electronic key does not operate properly....387
If you lose your keys....386
Key number plate....116
Keyless entry....120, 128
Mechanical key....116
Replacing the battery....353
Warning buzzer....129
Wireless remote control....118
Knee airbags....41

L

Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA)....219
Operation....219
Warning messages....225
Lane-Keeping Assist (LKA)....211
Operation....211
Warning messages....217
Language (multi-information display)..104
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)....219
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever....325
Hood lock release lever....325
Internal trunk release lever....127
Shift lever....173
Turn signal lever....180
Wiper lever....192
Lexus climate concierge....280
Lexus parking assist-sensor....249
Function....249
Warning message....251
Lexus Safety System +....198
Automatic High Beam....189
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....227
Dynamic radar cruise control....237
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)....219
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)....211
PCS (Pre-Collision System)....203
License plate lights....186
Light switch....186
Replacing light bulbs....359
Light bulbs
Replacing....359
Wattage....418
Lights
Automatic High Beam system....189
Fog light switch....191
Follow me home system....188
Headlight switch....186
Illuminated entry system....295
Interior lights list....295
Interior lights....295

Personal lights 296
Replacing light bulbs 359
Trunk light 126
Turn signal lever 180
Vanity lights 300
Wattage 418
Welcome light illumination control 187
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 211
Lock steering column 170
Operation 211
Warning messages 217
Low profile tire 336
Luggage cover 152

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 324
Maintenance data 410
Maintenance requirements 311
Scheduled maintenance 313
Malfunction indicator lamp 372
Master warning light 377
Meter
Changing the display 100
Head-up display 107
Indicators 93
Instrument panel light control 99
Meters 97
Multi-information display 100
Operating the meter control switches 101
Settings 104
Warning lights 371
Warning message 380
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 144
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 283
Outside rear view mirrors 145
Vanity mirrors 300
Multi-information display 100
Audio system-linked 104
Drive information 102
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 227
Dynamic radar cruise control 237
Eco Driving Indicator 95
Gear positions 102
G-force 103
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 222
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 214
Navigation system-linked 104
Settings 104
Suggestion function 106
Switching the display 101
Tire pressure 337
Warning message 380

N

nanoe™ 288
Navigation system-linked display 104, 107
Neck heaters 291

O

Odometer 97
Oil
Differential oil 414
Engine oil 412
Opener
Fuel filler door 196
Hood 325
Trunk 126
Outside door handle lights 295
Outside rear view mirrors 145
Adjustment 145
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Folding 146
Linked mirror function when reversing 146
Mirror position memory 138
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 283

Outside temperature display 97
Overheating 404

P

Package tray 51
Paddle shift switches 178, 179
Palm rest 148
Panic mode 118
Parking assist sensors 249
Parking brake 181
Indicator 375
Operation 181
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 183
Warning message 182
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 203
Function 203
PCS OFF switch 205
Warning light 373
Personal lights 295
Pollen removal mode 288
Pop-up display 99
Pop Up Hood 47
Power easy access system 138
Power outlet 300
Power steering (Electric power steering system) 266
Warning light 373
Warning message 381
Power windows 148
Door lock linked window operation 150
Jam protection function 150
Operation 148
Window lock switch 151
Pre-Collision System (PCS) 203
Function 203
PCS OFF switch 205
Warning light 373
Warning message 381

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control) 237
Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range) 227
Radiator 331
Rear quarter windows 148
Rear turn signal lights 180
Replacing light bulbs 359
Turn signal lever 180
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 144
Outside rear view mirrors 145
Rear window defogger 283
Refueling 196
Capacity 411
Fuel types 411
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 387
Opening the fuel tank cap 196
Remote Touch 276
Replacing
Electronic key battery 353
Fuses 355
Light bulbs 359
Tires 344
Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required 311
Rev indicator 98
Rev peak 98
Run-flat tires 337, 384

S

Seat belt reminder light 376
Seat belts 36
Child restraint system installation 55, 74
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 308
Emergency locking retractor 38
How to wear your seat belt 37

How your child should wear the seat belt 38
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 36
Rear seat belt holder 39
Reminder light and buzzer 376
Seat belt guide 38
Seat belt pretensioners 39
SRS warning light 372
Seat heaters 291
Seat lights 295
Seat position memory 138
Seats 136
Adjustment 136
Child seats/child restraint system installation 55, 74
Cleaning 308
Driving position memory 138
Head restraints 142
Jam protection function 137
Neck heaters 291
Power easy access system 138
Properly sitting in the seat 35
Seat heaters 291
Seat position memory 138
Seat ventilators 291
Seat ventilators 291
Secondary Collision Brake 266
Sensor
Automatic headlight system 187
Automatic High Beam system 189
Inside rear view mirror 144
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 87
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 219
Lexus parking assist 249
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 211
Radar sensor 198
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 193
Service reminder indicators 371
Service reminder message 311
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 173
Shift lever light 295
Shift position and gear position 97
Side airbags 41
Side mirrors 145
Adjustment 145
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 254
Folding 146
Linked mirror function when reversing 146
Mirror position memory 138
Side turn signal lights 180
Replacing light bulbs 359
Turn signal lever 180
Side windows 148
Slip indicator 374
Smart entry & start system 128
Antenna location 128
Entry functions 120
Starting the engine 170
Snow mode 178
Snow tires 271
Soft top roof 152
Luggage cover 152
Operation 152
Spark plug 413
Specifications 410
Speedometer 97
Sport mode 248
Steering lock
Column lock release 170
Steering lock system warning message 170
Steering wheel 143
Adjustment 143
Heated steering wheel 291
Power easy access system 138
Steering wheel position memory 138
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal 266

Replacing light bulbs....359
Storage feature....297
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck....406
Sun visors....300
Switches
"SOS" button....80
All window control switch....148
Automatic High Beam system....189
Brake Hold switch....184
BSM (Blind spot monitor) switch....255
Cruise control switch....228, 237, 245
Door lock switches....123
Driving mode select switch....248
Driving position memory switches....138
Emergency flashers switch....362
Engine switch....170
Fog light switch....191
Heated steering wheel switch....291
HUD (Head-up display) switch....107
Ignition switch....170
Instrument panel light control switch..99
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)....222
Lexus parking assist-sensor switch..250
Light switches....186
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch....214
Meter control switches....101
Neck heater switches....291
Outside rear view mirror switches....145
Paddle shift switches....178, 179
Parking brake switch....181
PCS OFF switch....205
Power door lock switch....123
Power window switches....148
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch....282
Roof switch....152
Seat heater switches....291
Seat ventilator switches....291
Snow mode switch....178
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch....143
Tire pressure warning reset switch....341
Trunk opener main switch....127
Trunk opener switch....126
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch....232, 241
VSC OFF switch....266
Window lock switch....151
Windshield wiper and washer switch192

T

Tachometer....97
Variable red zone....98
Tail lights....186
Light switch....186
Replacing light bulbs....359
Theft deterrent system
Alarm....86
Double locking system....85
Engine immobilizer system....83
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....87
Tire inflation pressure....349
Maintenance data....415, 416
Tire inflation pressure display function....337
Warning light....377
Tire pressure warning system....337
Function....337
Initializing....341
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters....340
Registering ID codes....343
Warning light....377
Tires....335
Chains....272
Checking....335
If you have a flat tire....384
Inflation pressure....349
Replacing....344

Rotating tires 336
Run-flat tires 337, 384
Size 415, 416
Snow tires 271
Tire inflation pressure display function 337
Tire pressure warning system 337
Warning light 377
Tools 345, 397
Towing
Emergency towing 365
Towing eyelet 367
Trailer towing 169
Traction Control (TRC) 265
Trailer towing 169
Transmission
Automatic transmission 173
Driving mode select switch 248
M mode 179
Paddle shift switches 178, 179
Snow mode 178
TRC (Traction Control) 265
Trip meters 97
Trunk 124
Internal trunk release lever 127
Smart entry & start system 126
Trunk features 299
Trunk grip 127
Trunk light 126
Trunk opener main switch 127
Trunk opener switch 126
Wireless remote control 126
Trunk light 126
Turn signal lights 180
Replacing light bulbs 359
Turn signal lever 180

U

Units 104

V

Vanity lights 300
Wattage 418
Vanity mirrors 300
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 266
Vehicle data recordings 7
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 266
Vehicle identification number 410
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 265
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 291
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 265

W

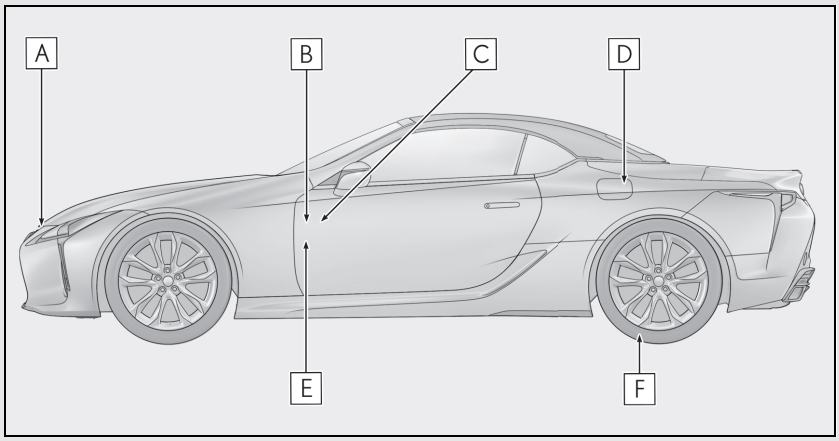
Warning buzzers
Approach warning 233, 242
Brake system 371
Downshifting 179
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 219
Lexus parking assist 249
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 211
Open door 122, 123
Open hood 123
Open soft top roof 153
Open trunk 123
Open window 150
Pre-collision braking 204
Seat belt reminder 376
Warning lights 371
ABS 372
Brake hold operated indicator 375
Brake Override System 375
Brake system 371, 375
Charging system 371
Electric power steering 373
High coolant temperature 378
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 374

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 374
Low engine oil pressure 372
Low fuel level 376
Malfunction indicator lamp 372
Master warning light 377
Parking brake indicator 375
Pre-collision system 373
Seat belt reminder light 376
Slip indicator 374
SRS 372
Tire pressure 377
Warning messages 380
Warning reflector storage belt 299
Washer 192
Checking 331
Headlight cleaners 192
Preparing and checking before winter 271
Switch 192
Washing and waxing 304
Wheels 350
Replacing wheels 344
Size 415, 416
Window lock switch 151
Windows 148
Power windows 148
Rear quarter windows 148
Rear window defogger 283
Side windows 148
Washer 192
Windshield wiper de-icer 287
Windshield wipers 192
Position 194
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 192
Winter driving tips 271
Wireless remote control 118
Battery-Saving Function 129
Locking/Unlocking 116
Replacing the battery 353

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual" or "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

- Audio/video system
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.325)

B Trunk opener (→P.126)

C Fuel filler door opener (→P.196)

D Fuel filler door (→P.196)

E Hood lock release lever (→P.325)

F Tire inflation pressure (→P.415)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	82 L (21.7 gal., 18.0 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.411
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.415
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.412
Engine oil type		P.412

ナX-2

Publication No. OM11600E
Part No. 01999-11600
Printed in Japan 01-2009-00 O
LC 500 コンバーチブル (一般E)